

# NATIONAL OPEN UNIVERSITY OF NIGERIA

# **FACULTY OF ARTS**

# **DEPARTMENT OF RELIGIOUS STUDIES**

COURSE CODE: CRS823

COURSE TITLE: FURTHER GREEK

#### **COURSE CODE: CRS823**

#### **COURSE TITLE: FURTHER GREEK**

#### **CREDIT UNIT: 3**

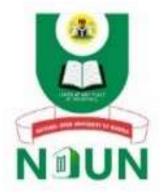
	COURSE TEAM
COURSE DEVELOPER(S)	Prof. Olubiyi Adeniyi Adewale Dept of Religious Studies National Open University of Nigeria Abuja
COURSE WRITER(S)	Prof. Olubiyi Adeniyi Adewale Dept of Religious Studies National Open University of Nigeria Abuja
COURSE EDITOR(S)	Prof. Peter Bauna Tanko Ahmadu Bello University, Zaria
COURSE REVIEWER	Michael Enyinwa Okoronkwo (Rev Fr, PhD) Dept of Religious Studies National Open University of Nigeria Abuja

YEAR OF REVIEW: 2021 © 2021 by NOUN Press National Open University of Nigeria Headquarters University Village Plot 91, Cadastral Zone Nnamdi Azikiwe Expressway Jabi, Abuja

Lagos Office 14/16 Ahmadu Bello Way Victoria Island, Lagos

Email: centralinfo@noun.edu.ng URL: www.noun.edu.ng

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, in any form or by any means, without permission in writing from the publisher.



# **COURSE GUIDE**

Introduction	4
What you will learn in this Course	4
Course Aims	4-5
Course Objectives	5-6
Working through this Course	6
Course Materials	6
Study Units	6-7
Set Textbooks	7-8
Assignment File	8
Presentation Schedule	8
Assessment	8
Tutor-Marked Assignments	8
Final Examination and Grading	9
Course Marking Scheme	9
Course Overview	10
How to get the Best from this Course	
11-12	
Tutors and Tutorials	12
Summary	13

#### Introduction

**CRS823**: Further Greek is a one-semester 3-credit unit course. The course is available toward the award of first degree in Christian

Theology. The course material can also be useful for students in other levels of Christian Theology. Besides, those who wish to broaden their knowledge on religious ideas, especially the role on biblical languages in the understanding of the New Testament can find this course material beneficial. CRS215 is however the prerequisite for this course. In other words, if you have not offered and passed CRS215 you may not offer this course.

This course is made up of 21 units. It will begin from a brief revision of CRS215 (Greek Grammar). This is to refresh your memory of what has been learnt in CRS215. After this, you will begin the study of the other grammatical issues and the moods that you have not learnt in CRS215. The last module will deal largely with the issues of translation and the syntactical implications of words in translation. You will have to translate from large passages of the scripture and explain why certain words are preferred in translation over others.

The Course Guide tells you briefly what the course is about, what you are expected to know in each unit, what course materials you will be using and how you can work your way through the materials. It also emphasizes the need for Tutor – Marked Assignments (TMAs). Detailed information on TMAs is found in a separate file, which will be sent to you later. There are periodic tutorial classes that are linked to this course.

#### What You Will Learn in this Course

The overall aim of **CRS216** is to help you develop a systematic growth in the use of biblical Greek so that you can get to the level where you can access the original language and do your translation/interpretation without recourse to any existing translation of the New Testament. This will help you in your personal Bible study, sermon preparation and the development of study guide for use in the Church.

#### **Course Aims**

The aim of this course is to help you discover the importance of language in the understanding of the New Testament literature since the New Testament was originally written in the Koine Greek. This will be achieved by:

Introducing you to the complexities of translation and the issues involved in syntactical relationships.

#### **Course Objectives**

To achieve the aims set out above, there are set overall objectives. Besides, each unit has its specific objectives. The unit objectives would be included in the beginning of each unit. You should read them before you start working through the unit. It is advisable that you refer to them during your study of the unit to check on your progress. At the end of every unit, you should also revise the unit objectives. In this way you can be sure that you have done all you are expected to do in the unit.

Listed below are the broader objectives of this course. It is expected that by meeting these objectives, the overall aims of the course must have been achieved. At the end of this course, you should be able to:

#### Working through this Course

To complete this course, you are required to read the study units, read the recommended books and the other materials provided by the National Open University (NOUN). Each unit contains self-assessment exercises, and at points during the course you are required to submit assignments for assessment purposes. At the end of this course there is a final examination. Below you will find listed all the components of the course and what you have to do.

#### **Course Materials**

Major components of the course are:

- 1. Course Guide
- 2. Study Units
- 3. Textbooks
- 4. Assignments file
- 5. Presentation schedule

You must obtain these materials. You may contact your tutor if you have problems in obtaining the text materials.

#### Study Units

There are twenty study units in this course. They are listed as follows: Unit 1: Greek Nouns Unit 2: Present Indicative Verbs Unit 3: The Imperfect Indicative Unit 4: Future Active and Future Middle Indicative Unit 5: The Aorist Indicative Unit 6: Participles Unit 7: The Perfect Indicative

- Unit 9: The Subjunctive Mood: Conditions
- Unit 8: The Subjunctive Mood: Conditional Sentences
- Unit 9: The Imperative Mood

Unit 10: Contract Verbs Unit 11: Pronouns Unit 12: Adjectives Unit 13: Verbs of the –mi Conjugation Unit 14: The Article Unit 15: The Infinitive Unit 16: Syntactical Issues in Greek Nouns and Pronouns Unit 17: Syntactical Issues in Greek Verbs I Unit 18: Syntactical Issues in Greek Verbs II Unit 19: Syntactical Issues: Adjectives and Imperfect Tense Unit 20: Syntactical Issues: Participles

Each unit contains a number of self- tests. In general, these self-tests question you on the material you have just covered or require you to apply the material in some ways, and thereby, help you to gauge your progress and to reinforce your understanding of the material. Together with your tutor- marked assignments, these exercises will assist you in achieving the stated learning objectives of the individual units and of the course.

#### Set Textbooks

These textbooks are recommended for your study in this course: Adewale, 'Biyi and E. Ojo (2000). *Mastering the Greek New Testament*, Oyo: Multicrown Publishers

Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini and B. M.

Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies

Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini and B. M.

Metzger (eds.) (1993). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies

Mounce, Williams D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan

Summers, Ray (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press

#### Assignment file

In this file you will find all the details of the work you must submit to your tutor for marking. The marks you obtain from these assignments will count toward the final mark you obtain for this course. Further information on assignment will be found in the assignment file itself and later in this Course Guide in the section on assessment.

#### **Presentation Schedule**

The "presentation schedule" included in your course materials gives you the important dates for the completion of your tutor marked assignments and attending tutorials. Remember, you are required to submit all your assignment as and when due.

#### Assessment

There are two aspects to the assessment of this course. First are the tutor-marked assignments; second, there is a written examination. While working on your assignments, you are expected to apply information and knowledge acquired during this course. The assignments must be submitted to your tutor for formal assessment in accordance with the deadlines stated in the assignment file. The work you submit to your tutor for assessment will count for 30% of your total course mark. At the end of the course, you will need to sit for a final three-hour examination. This will also count for 70% of your total course mark.

#### **Tutor Marked Assignments (TMAs)**

There are fifteen tutor assignments in this course. You need to submit all the assignments. The best three (that is, the three with the highest grades of fifteen assignments) will be counted. The total mark of the best three will be 30% of your total course mark.

Assignments for the units in this course are contained in the Assignment File. You should be able to complete your assignments from the information and materials contained in your set textbooks, reading and study units. However, you are advised to use other references to broaden your viewpoint and provide a deeper understanding of the subject.

#### **Final Examination and Grading**

The examination will consist of questions you will come across in tutor marked assignments. You are therefore advised to revise the entire course after studying the last unit before you sit for the examination.

#### **Course Marking Scheme**

The table below gives a break down of the course mark:

Assessment	Marks
Assignments 1-15	Three assignments, best three marks
	of the assignments counts
	for 30% of course marks.
Final examination	The final examination counts for
	70% of overall marks.
Total	100% of course marks

Table 1: Course Marking Scheme

#### **Course Overview**

This table brings together the units, the number of works you should

take to complete.

Unit	Title of Work	Week's	Assessment
		Activity	(end of unit)
	Course Guide		
1	Greek Nouns	1	Assignment 1
2	Present Indicative Verbs	2	Assignment 2
3	The Imperfect Indicative	3	Assignment 4
4	Future Active and Future Middle Indicative	4	Assignment 4
5	The Aorist Indicative	5	Assignment 5
6	Participles	6	Assignment 6
7	The Perfect Indicative	7	Assignment 7
8	The Subjunctive Mood: Conditional Sentences	8	Assignment 8
9	The Imperative Mood	9	Assignment 9
10	Contract Verbs	10	Assignment 10
11	Pronouns	11	Assignment 11
12	Adjectives	12	Assignment 12
13	Verbs of the -mi Conjugation	13	Assignment 13
14	The Article	14	Assignment 14
15	The Infinitive	15	Assignment 15
16	Syntactical Issues in Greek Nouns and Pronouns	16	Assignment 16
17	Syntactical Issues in Greek Verbs I	17	Assignment 17
18	Syntactical Issues in Greek Verbs II	18	Assignment 18
19	Syntactical Issues: Adjectives and Imperfect Tense	19	Assignment 19
20	Syntactical Issues: Participles	20	Assignment 20
21	Revision	21	Revision
22	Revision	16	Revision
23	Revision	17	Revision

Table 2: Course Overview

#### How to Get the Best from this Course

In distance learning the study units replace the university Lecturer. This is one of the great advantages of the distance learning system. You can read and work through specially designed study materials at your own pace.

Each of the study units follows a common format. The first item is an introduction to the subject matter of the unit and how a particular unit is integrated with the other units and the course as a whole. Following this is a set of learning objectives. These objectives enable you know what you should be able to do by the time you have completed the unit. The objectives should guide your study. After studying the units must cross viii

check whether you have achieved the objectives. If you adhere strictly to this art of checking whether the objective is achieved or not, you will definitely improve your chances of passing the course.

The main body of the unit guides you through the required reading from other sources. This will usually be either from your set books or from a "Reading" section. Whenever you need help, don't hesitate to call and ask your tutor to provide it.

1. Read through this Course Guide thoroughly.

2. Plan your study schedule. You should refer to the 'course overview' for more details. Find out the time you are expected to spend on each unit and when and how to turn in your assignments.

3. Stick to your study schedule. Don't allow anything to get you distracted from your study schedule.

4. Turn to Unit 1 and read the introduction and objectives for the unit.

5. Gather the study material you need. All you need or a unit is given in the 'Overview' at the beginning of each unit. The study unit you are working on and one of your set books should be on your desk at the same time.

6. Work through the unit. The content of the unit has been arranged in a sequential order. Instructions would be given on where to read from your set books or other articles. Use the unit to guide your reading.

7. Review the objectives for each study unit to confirm you have achieved them.

8. Don't proceed to the next unit, until you are sure you have achieved the objectives of the unit you are working on.

9. Don't wait until your assignment is returned before working on the next unit. Keep to your schedule.

10. When you complete the last unit, you can be preparing for exams.

Be sure that you have achieved the unit objectives (listed at the beginning of each unit) and the course objectives (listed in this Course Guide).

#### **Tutors and Tutorials**

There are 8 hours of tutorials provided in support of this course. The dates, times and location of these tutorials, together with the name and phone number of your tutor will be communicated to you. This will be done as you are allocated to a tutorial group.

Your tutor will mark and comment on your assignments, keep a close watch on your progress and on any difficulties, you might encounter and provide assistance to you during the course. You must mail your tutor marked assignments to your tutor well before the due date (at least two working days are required). They will be marked by your tutor and returned to you as soon as possible. Do not hesitate to contact our tutor by telephone, e-mail or discussion board if you need help. The following might be the circumstances in which you will find help necessary. Contact your tutor if:

You do not understand any part of the study units or the assigned readings.

You have difficulty with the self-tests or exercises, and

You have a question or problem with an assignment, with your tutor's comment on an assignment or with the grading of an assignment.

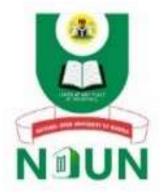
You should try your best to attend the tutorials. This is the only chance to interact with your tutor by asking questions which are answered instantly. You can raise any problem encountered in the course of your study. To maximize the benefits of the course tutorials, it is advisable that you prepare a question list before attending them. When you participate in the discussions your intellectually life will be deeply enriched.

#### Summary

CRS823 will lead you to a working knowledge of the Greek language and the ability to consult the original language of the New Testament thereby enriching your knowledge of the Bible. It will expose you to the exegetical principles that are involved in the process of translation and interpreting. On successful completion of this course, you will be able to answer questions such as:

- 1. What are the uses of the imperfect tense in the Greek language?
- 2. How does mood affect interpretation?
- 3. What is the relationship between translation and exegesis?
- 4. What is the relationship between translation, exeges is and theology?
- 5. What is the best way to render the incipient imperfect?
- 6. What is the best way to translate the iterative imperfect?
- 7.What is the best way to translate the present continuous tense in the Greek?
- 8. What is the difference between the aorist and the imperfect tense?
- 9. What are the similarities between the aorist and the imperfect tense?
- 10. Evaluate your understanding of John 1:14b before now and after this course.

The questions you will able to answer should not be limited to the ones above. Greek Grammar is a course you will find interesting and stimulating.



# MAIN COURSE



# NATIONAL OPEN UNIVERSITY OF NIGERIA

# MODULE 1

- Unit 1: Greek Nouns
- Unit 2: Present Indicative Verbs
- Unit 3: The Imperfect Indicative
- Unit 4: Future Active and Future Middle Indicative
- Unit 5: Aorist Indicative

# UNIT 1: Greek Nouns

# Content

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Objectives
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Cases in Greek Noun
  - 3.2 Declensions in Greek Noun
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References and Further Readings

# 1.0 Introduction

You are welcome to the study of CRS823-Further Greek. This course is the continuation of undergraduate Greek studies; therefore, it is assumed that you would have had at least two semesters of Greek. However, because of the importance of the understanding of undergraduate Greek to this course, we will use the first module to run through the major topics taught at that level, by way of refreshing your memory and setting the tone for this course. Thus, in this unit we will revise all that has been taught about Greek nouns.

# 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- Identify all the declensions of Greek nouns
- Differentiate between nouns of the three declensions
- Differentiate between the various declensions of the feminine noun
- State the functions of the various cases
- Decline any given noun

#### 3.0 Main Content

#### 3.1 Cases in Greek Noun

Case is the word used to refer to the various functions that nouns perform in the sentence. Though the English has three cases, the Greek language has eight cases:

#### The Nominative Case

The nominative case is the subject of the sentence. You would remember that in the Greek nominative case two issues are lumped together. The first is that the noun functions as the topic or the subject of the sentence. It is the case of designation.

The second is when a noun completes the thought of the subject. It usually occurs when the noun follows the verb 'to be'. When this usage occurs, two nouns in the sentence would be in the nominative case. In such occurrences, you need to determine which one is the subject, and which one is the subject complement. In most cases, the subject carries the definite article while the complement has its definite article withdrawn but it is implied. This has a serious implication for exegesis and interpretation and would be explained later.

#### The Accusative Case

The accusative case is usually used for the direct object. The direct object receives the action of the verb in the sentence. It marks the limit or the end of an action.

# The Dative Case

When the noun functions as the indirect object, it gives an idea of the person or thing **to** whom and or **for** whom something is done. In the Greek language, the noun that functions as the indirect object would be in the dative case. The dative case is the case of interest. You should also remember that there are other cases that are spelt the same way as the dative. These are the locative and the instrumental cases.

# The Genitive Case

This is when the noun is used to show that someone or something is the owner of a particular thing. Though in the English language, the possessive 's' is usually used to designate this usage, in the Greek language the genitive case is used. The genitive case is the case of description. It is used to attribute quality to the word it modifies. You need to remember also that the ablative case, which is the case of separation, is also spelt the same way as the genitive case.

#### **The Vocative Case**

There are times when the person being **addressed** is called before the statement meant for them. For example, in the sentence "Sade, where are you?" Sade is the person addressed. In the Greek language, this usage is put in the vocative case.

# 3.2 Noun Declensions in Greek

There are three forms of declensions in the Greek language. The first declension has an inflected system in which the 'a' sound is predominant; the second declension is predominant with the 'o' sound and the third declension has a system in which the consonant stem is predominant. Since the largest number of nouns of the Greek is in the second declension and since it is easier to learn than the others; it is usually studied first.

# **Declension of Masculine Nouns of Second Declension**

Cases	Singular Form	Meaning	Plural Form	Meaning	
Nominative	ό ἄνθρωπος	the man	οἱ ἄνθρωποι	the men	
Genitive	τοῦ ἀνθρώπου	of the man	τῶν ἀνθρώπων	of the men	
Ablative	τοῦ ἀνθρώπου	from the	τῶν ἀνθρώπων	from the men	
		man			
Dative	τῷ ἀνθρώπω	to the man	τοῖς ἀνθρώποις	to the men	
Locative	τῷ ἀνθρώπω	in the man	τοῖς ἀνθρώποις	in the men	
Instrumental	τῷ ἀνθρώπω	by the man	τοῖς ἀνθρώποις	by the men	
Accusative	τὸν ἄνθρωπον	the man	τοὺς ἀνθρώπους	the men	
Vocative	ἄνθρωπε	man	άνθρωποι	men	

To decline the masculine nouns of the second declension, the Greek word  $\ddot{\alpha}\nu\theta\rho\omega\pi\sigma\varsigma$  shall be used:

# Neuter Nouns of the Second Declension

There is a slight difference between the declension of the masculine nouns and the neuter nouns of the second declension. As would be seen in the paradigm above, the difference occurs only in the nominative singular and the nominative and accusative plural. In declining the neuter noun,  $\delta \tilde{\omega} \rho ov$  shall be used:

# Declension of $\delta \tilde{\omega} \rho ov$ with the definite article

Cases	Singular Form	Meaning	Plural Form	Meaning
Nominative	τὸ δῶρον	the gift	τὰ δῶρα	the gifts
Genitive	τοῦ δώρου	of the gift	τῶν δώρων	of the men
Ablative	τοῦ δώρου	from the gift	τῶν δώρων	from the men
Dative	τῷ δώρῳ	to the gift	τοῖς δώροις	to the men
Locative	τῷ δώρῳ	in the gift	τοῖς δώροις	in the men
Instrumental	τῷ δώρῳ	by the gift	τοῖς δώροις	by the men
Accusative	τὸ δῶρον	the gift	τὰ δῶρα	the men
Vocative	δῶρον	Gift	δῶρα	men

# **Feminine Nouns of the First Declension**

1. When the stem ends in  $\sigma$ ,  $\lambda\lambda$ , or any of the double consonants, the nominative singular ends in short  $\alpha$ , which changes to  $\eta$  in the genitive, ablative, dative, locative and instrumental as in  $\dot{\eta} \gamma \lambda \tilde{\omega} \sigma \sigma \alpha$  below:

Cases	Singular Form	Meaning	Plural Form	Meaning
Nominative	ή γλῶσσα	the tongue	αί γλῶσσαι	the tongues
Genitive	τῆς γλώσσης	of the tongue	τῶν γλωσσῶν	of the tongues
Ablative	τῆς γλώσσης	from the tongue	τῶν γλωσσῶν	from the tongues
Dative	τῆ γλώσση	to the tongue	ταῖς γλώσσαις	to the tongues
Locative	τῆ γλώσση	in the tongue	ταῖς γλώσσαις	in the tongues
Instrumental	τῆ γλώσση	by the tongue	ταῖς γλώσσαις	by the tongues
Accusative	τὴν γλῶσσαν	the tongue	τὰς γλώσσας	the tongues
Vocative	ή γλῶσσα	The tongue	αί γλῶσσαι	the tongues

2. When the stem ends in any other letter, the nominative singular will end in  $\eta$ , which is retained throughout the singular, as in  $\dot{\eta} \gamma \rho a \phi \dot{\eta}$  below:

Decleminion of	insion of it ypawit with the definite at tele					
Cases	Singular	Meaning	<b>Plural Form</b>	Meaning		
	Form					
Nominative	ή γραφή	the writing	αἱ γραφάι	the writings		
Genitive	τῆς γραφῆς	of the writing	τῶν γραφῶν	of the writings		
Ablative	τῆς γραφῆς	from the writing	τῶν γραφῶν	from the writings		
Dative	τῆ γραφῆ	to the writing	ταῖς γραφαῖς	to the writings		
Locative	τῆ γραφῆ	in the writing	ταῖς γραφαῖς	in the writings		
Instrumental	τῆ γραφῆ	by the writing	ταῖς γραφαῖς	by the writings		
Accusative	τὴν γραφήν	the writing	τὰς γραφάς	the writings		
Vocative	ή γραφή	the writing	αἱ γραφάι	the writings		

# **Declension of ἡ γρaφή with the definite article**

# **Declension of the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension**

As has been said earlier, there are five declension systems in the first declension system. The three that are feminine had been shown above. The last two are masculine and they are as follows:

When a masculine noun of the first declension has a stem ending in  $\varepsilon$ ,  $\iota$  or  $\rho$ , the nominative singular will be  $\alpha\varsigma$  (long  $\alpha$ ). All other stem endings are followed by  $\eta\varsigma$  in the nominative singular, as in the examples below:

Cases	Singular Form	Meaning	Plural Form	Meaning
Nominative	ό Μεσσίας	the Messiah	οἱ Μεσσίαι	the Messiahs
Genitive	τοῦ Μεσσίου	of the Messiah	τῶν Μεσσιῶν	Of the Messiahs

# Declension of Μεσσίας, δ with the definite article

Ablative	τοῦ Μεσσίου	from the	τῶν Μεσσιῶν	From the	
		Messiah		Messiahs	
Dative	τῷ Μεσσία	to the Messiah	ταῖς Μεσσίαις	to the Messiahs	
Locative	τῷ Μεσσία	in the Messiah	ταῖς Μεσσίαις	in the Messiahs	
Instrumental	τῷ Μεσσία	by the Messiah	ταῖς Μεσσίαις	by the Messiahs	
Accusative	τὸν Μεσσίαν	the Messiah	τοὺς Μεσσίας	The Messiahs	
Vocative	ὁ Μεσσίας	The Messiah	οἱ Μεσσίαι	The Messiahs	

2. All other stem endings are followed by  $\eta\varsigma$  in the nominative singular, as in  $\delta \pi\rho o\phi \eta \tau \eta\varsigma$  below:

Cases	Singular	Meaning	Plural Form	Meaning
	Form			_
Nominative	ό προφήτης	the prophet	οί προφῆται	the prophets
Genitive	τοῦ προφήτου	of the prophet	τῶν προφητῶν	of the prophets
Ablative	τοῦ προφήτου	from the	τῶν προφητῶν	from the
		prophet	prophet prop	
Dative	τῷ προφήτη	to the prophet	τοῖς προφήταις	to the prophets
Locative	τῷ προφήτη	in the prophet	τοῖς προφήταις	in the prophets
Instrumental	τῷ προφήτη	by the prophet	τοῖς προφήταις	by the prophets
Accusative	τὸν προφήτην	the prophet	τοὺς	The prophets
			προφήταις	
Vocative	Προφήτης	the prophet	προφῆται	the prophets

#### Declension of $\delta \pi \rho o \phi \eta \tau \eta \varsigma$ with the definite article

#### **The Third Declension**

In the third declension, there is a basic change in the dative plural form especially when the stem of the noun ends in a consonant. This is because the declension has to end with  $\sigma_{L}$ . The following changes have to take place:

- $\pi$ , β or φ added to σι becomes ψι
- $\kappa$ , γ or  $\chi$  added to σι becomes ξι
- $\tau$ ,  $\delta$  or  $\theta$  drops out leaving the  $\sigma_1$
- v drops out leaving the  $\sigma i$

vt drops out leaving the  $\sigma_i$  but because two consonants are lost the vowel preceding the vt is lengthened. Through this, o becomes ou as in ǎp $\chi$ ov $\tau_a$  which will become ǎp $\chi$ ov $\sigma_i$ . Note that all these third plural inflected forms may take the movable n. Before giving the paradigms, it is better to first give the endings for the third declension:

	Singular			Plural		
Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	$\varsigma$ (or none)	$\zeta$ (or none)	none	εν	εν	none
Gen.	ος	Ος	ος	ων	ων	ων
Dav.	ι (short)	ι (short)	ι (short)	σι (short)	σι (short)	σι (short)
Acc.	ν or α	v or a	none	ας (short)	ας (short)	α (short)
	(short)	(short)				

Voc. None None none	Not Applicable
---------------------	----------------

The following are paradigms for the declension:

# Liquid Stem (using αἰών)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	αἰών	αἰῶνες
<b>Genitive (Ablative)</b>	αἰῶνος	αἰώνων
Dative (Loc., Inst.)	αἰῶνι	αἰῶσι
Accusative	αἰῶνα	αἰῶνας
Vocative	αἰών	αἰῶνες

# Mute Stem (using χάρις)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	χάρις	χάριτες
Genitive (Ablative)	χάριτος	χαρίτων
Dative (Loc., Inst.)	χάριτι	χάρισι
Accusative	χάριν	χάριτας
Vocative	χάρις	χάριτες

# Mute Stem (using $\dot{\epsilon}\lambda\pi$ íς)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	έλπίς	ἐλπίδες
Genitive (Ablative)	έλπίδος	έλπίδων
Dative (Loc., Inst.)	έλπίδι	ἐλπίσι
Accusative	έλπίδα	ἐλπίδας
Vocative	έλπίς	έλπίδες

# Mute Stem (using νύξ)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	νύξ	νύκτες
Genitive (Ablative)	νυκτός	νυκτῶν
Dative (Loc., Inst.)	νυκτί	νυξί /
Accusative	νύκτα	νύκτας
Vocative	νύξ	νύκτες

# Syncopated Stem (using $\pi \alpha \tau \eta \rho$ )

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	Πατήρ	πατέρες
Genitive (Ablative)	Πατρός	πατέρων
Dative (Loc., Inst.)	Πατρί	πατράσι
Accusative	Πατέρα	πατέρας
Vocative	πάτερ	Πατέρες

The following analysis calls attention to the characteristics of the inflection of these nouns:

Find the stem by striking off the s in the nominative singular.

- $\varepsilon$  replaces the final  $\iota$  except in the nominative, accusative and vocative singular.
- $\varepsilon$  unites with  $\iota$  ending in dative singular to form a diphthong.
- $\epsilon\iota\varsigma$  in nominative plural and accusative plural is the result of the contraction of  $\epsilon\epsilon\varsigma$  and  $\epsilon\alpha\varsigma$  respectively.
- The accent of the genitive singular and plural is irregular and stands on the antepenult even with a long ultima.

# **The** ευ **Stem Nouns**

The  $\varepsilon v$  stem nouns of the third declension are all masculine. The following is the paradigm using i $\varepsilon \rho \varepsilon v \zeta$ :

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ίερεύς	ίερεῖς
Genitive (Ablative)	ίερέως	ίερέων
Dative (Loc., Inst.)	ίερεῖ	ίερεῦσι
Accusative	ίερέα	ίερεῖς
Vocative	່ເຮρεῦ	ίερεῖς

# **The ευ Stem Nouns (using ἱερεύς)**

The following features could be noted in the analysis of the inflection of this class:

- Find the stem by striking off the  $\sigma$  of the nominative singular.
- The final  $\upsilon$  of the stem is dropped before an ending with  $\alpha$  vowel.
- In the dative singular and the nominative and accusative plural the same combinations are found in the *i* stem nouns proper.

# The v Stem Nouns

The v stem nouns of the third declension are mostly masculine; however, there are a few feminine and one neuter ( $\delta \dot{\alpha} \kappa \rho v$ , a tear) noun. The inflection is regular. The stem is found by dropping the  $\sigma$  of the nominative singular.

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ἰχθύς	ἰχθύες
Genitive (Ablative)	ίχθύος	ίχθύων
Dative (Loc., Inst.)	ίχθύι	ἰχθύςι
Accusative	ίχθύν	iχθύας or iχθῦς
Vocative	ίχθύ	ἰχθύες

# The υ Stem Nouns (using ἰχθύς)

The following features could be noted in the analysis of the inflection of this class:

- Find the stem by striking off the  $\sigma$  of the nominative singular.
- The final v of the stem is dropped before an ending with  $\alpha$  vowel.
- In the dative singular and the nominative and accusative plural the same combinations as are found in  $\theta \epsilon i$  stem nouns proper.

# **3.2 The ες Stem Nouns**

In the above vocabularies, the first column contains the nouns known as the  $\varepsilon_{\zeta}$  stem nouns. They are so called because the stem really ends with  $\varepsilon_{\zeta}$ . In the actual inflection of the nouns so many contractions have taken place that the basic stem cannot be seen anymore. The endings given for the third declension nouns earlier should be reviewed. Note how these endings are used and the changes in form in the following example. The stem here is  $\gamma \varepsilon v \varepsilon_{\zeta}$ -:

	Sing	Singular		Plural	
Case	<b>Original Form</b>	Form Actually	<b>Original Form</b>	Form Actually	
		Used		Used	
Nominative	γένες	γένος	γένεσα	γένη	
Genitive	γένεσος	γένους	γένεσων	γένηων	
Ablative)					
Dative (Loc.,	Γένεσι	γένει	γένεσσι	γένεσι	
Inst.)					
Accusative	γένες	γένος	γένεσα	γένη	
Vocative	γένες	γένος	γένεσα	γένη	

Note that the changes in the paradigm above are due to the loss of  $\sigma$  in many of the forms and the resulting contraction of the  $\epsilon$  with the case ending. For practical usage, you should learn the forms that are actually used rather than the original forms which are not used in the New Testament at all. You should also know that all the third declension neuter nouns with the genitive ending in  $\omega_{\zeta}$  will be declined as above.

#### The ατ Stem Nouns

The nouns in the second column of the vocabulary above are all  $\alpha\tau$  stem nouns. If you strike off the  $o\varsigma$  of the genitive singular you will arrive at the stem. The endings are added normally. You have to note however that the nominative and the accusative singular contain the short form of the word. Note also the loss of the  $\tau$  before  $\sigma\iota$  in the dative plural. It has to be noted that all  $\alpha\tau$  stem neuter nouns would be declined as in the paradigm below:

#### The ατ Stem Nouns (using σῶμα)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative	σῶμα	σώματα
Genitive (Ablative)	σώματος	σώματων
Dative (Loc., Inst.)	σώματι	σώμαςι
Accusative	σῶμα	σώματα
Vocative	σῶμα	σώματα

#### The Article

Remember that there is no indefinite article in the Greek language and that the absence of the definite article implies the indefinite article. Hence,  $\ddot{\alpha}\nu\theta\rho\omega\pi\sigma\nu$  can mean either 'a man' or 'man'. The Greek article is usually used to point out particular identity and this is called the articular use of a noun. When no definite article is used, it is called the anarthrous use. Below is the full paradigm of Greek articles:

Cases	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
	Sing	ular	
Nominative	ò	ή	τò
Genitive &	τοῦ	τῆ	τοῦ
Ablative			
Dative, Locative	τῷ	τῆς	τῷ
& Instrumental			
Accusative	Τὸν	τὴν	τò
	Plu	ıral	
Nominative	oi	αί	τὰ
Genitive &	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
Ablative			
Dative, Locative			
& Instrumental	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
Accusative	Τοὺς	τὰς	τὰ

# 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit you have all the three declensions of Greek nouns studied all at once. You have been taught that the Greek language has eight cases in the noun declension. Though some scholars say they are five; it is because some of them have identical spellings and so they were considered functions of the major one. You would have also noticed that there are three forms of declension: the first declension has five variations wherein three are feminine nouns and the remaining two are masculine; the second declension has mainly masculine and neuter nouns while the third declension has all the three genders. This unit concluded with an overview of the articles by gender, number and case.

# 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points you have learnt in this unit:

- The Greek language has eight cases in the noun declension. Though some scholars say they are five; it is some of them have identical spellings and so they were considered functions of the major one.
- There are three forms of declension in the Greek language called the first, second and third declensions.
- The first declension has five variations wherein three are feminine nouns and the remaining two are masculine.

• The second declension has mainly masculine and neuter nouns. The third declension has all the three genders.

# Self-Assessment Exercise

Fish out ten nouns from the passage below and indicate their gender and case.

1 Ὁ πρεσβύτερος ἐκλεκτῷ κυρία καὶ τοῖς τέκνοις αὐτῆς, οὓς ἐγὼ ἀγαπῶ ἐν ἀληθεία, καὶ οὐκ ἐγὼ μόνος ἀλλὰ καὶ πάντες οἱ ἐγνωκότες τὴν ἀλήθειαν, 2 διὰ τὴν ἀλήθειαν τὴν μένουσαν ἐν ἡμῖν, καὶ μεθ' ἡμῶν ἔσται εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα· 3 ἔσται μεθ' ἡμῶν χάρις ἕλεος εἰρήνη παρὰ θεοῦ πατρός, καὶ παρὰ Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ τοῦ υἰοῦ τοῦ πατρός, ἐν ἀληθεία καὶ ἀγάπῃ. 4 Ἐχάρην λίαν ὅτι εὕρηκα ἐκ τῶν τέκνων σου περιπατοῦντας ἐν ἀληθεία, καθὼς ἐντολὴν ἐλάβομεν παρὰ τοῦ πατρός. 5 καὶ νῦν ἐρωτῶ σε, κυρία, οὐχ ὡς ἐντολὴν καινὴν γράφων σοι ἀλλὰ ἣν εἴχομεν ἀπ' ἀρχῆς, ἵνα ἀγαπῶμεν ἀλλήλους.

# 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Biyi & E. Ojo (2000). *Mastering the Greek New Testament*, Oyo: Multicrown Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.

Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.

Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# UNIT 2: PRESENT INDICATIVE VERBS

# Content

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 The Present Active Indicative Form
  - 3.2 The Present Passive Indicative
  - 3.3 The Present Middle Indicative
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References and Further Readings

# 1.0 Introduction

In the last unit we have spent our time to review all the three noun declensions of the Greek language. I am sure by now that you would have revised all the units on nouns in undergraduate Greek so that you can flow along with us in this course. In this unit we will begin a review of Greek verbs and because of the magnitude of the verbs; we will tackle them be tense and by mood. In this unit, we will examine the present indicative verbs. Remember that in your previous study you have been taught that the present indicative mood is that mood that represent the continuous action in the English language or the simple present tense. You need to be cautious as your interpretation would go a long way to affect what you are going to bring out of the text.

# 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- Write the present active indicative of any verb
- Identify the present passive indicative of any verb
- Discuss the usages of the passive voice
- Discuss the usages of the middle voice

# 3.0 Main Content

# 3.1 The Present Active Indicative Form

As you have been taught, the tense carries two aspects of the verb and these are the time of the action and the kind of the action. As for time, there are three possibilities: the past, the present and the future. Also, as for kind, there are two kinds: the linear (this is also called the progressive or continuous action) and the punctiliar (this is action that is seen as a single perspective). The present tense that we are concerned with in this unit indicates a progressive action at the present time and so would be better translated in that sense. For example, the word  $\lambda \dot{\omega} would$  be "I am loosing".

The present active indicative form of  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  is:

λύω I loose or I am losing (destroy)

λύεις	you (s) loose or you (s) are loosing
λύει	he (she, it) loose or he (she, it) is loosing
λύομεν	we loose or we are loosing
λύετε	you (p) loose or you (p) are loosing
λύουσι(ν)	they loose or they are loosing

# **3.2 The Present Passive Indicative**

The passive voice in the Greek is used when the subject is being acted upon by an outside agent. Present active indicative of  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  is "I am loosing" and the present passive would be "I am being loosed". This means that the present passive pictures continuous action being received by the subject at the present time.

The primary endings of the present passive are:  $\mu\alpha\iota$ ,  $\sigma\alpha\iota$ ,  $\tau\alpha\iota$ ,  $\mu\epsilon\theta\alpha$ ,  $\sigma\theta\epsilon$  and  $\nu\tau\alpha\iota$ . These are added to the stem of the word by means of the variable vowel which is either o or  $\epsilon$ . It has to be noted however that in the second person singular, a significant change occurred during the development of the language. The sigma sound got lost and the  $\epsilon$  and  $\alpha$  sound got contracted to  $\eta$ , and the  $\iota$  became a subscript. This would be reflected in the paradigm below.

# The Present Passive Indicative of $\lambda \dot{\omega}$ is as follows:

λύομαι	I am being loosed	λύομεθα	we are being loosed
λύη	you are being loosed	λύομεθα	you are being loosed
λύεται	he, (she, it) is being loosed	λύονται	they are being loosed

# **3.3** The Usages of the Passive Voice

# When Direct Agent is indicated

When the direct agent producing the action on the subject is indicated, the construction is  $\dot{\upsilon}\pi\dot{\upsilon}$  with the genitive. For example,  $\delta\iota\delta\dot{\imath}\sigma\kappa\epsilon\tau\alpha\iota$   $\dot{\upsilon}\pi\dot{\upsilon}$   $\tau\sigma\tilde{\upsilon}$   $\dot{\imath}\gamma\gamma\dot{\epsilon}\lambda\sigma\upsilon$  means "he is being taught by the messenger".

# When Indirect Agent is indicated

When the agent indicated is the indirect (that is, the agent through which the original agent acts), the construction is  $\delta i a$  with the genitive. For example,  $\delta \kappa \delta \sigma \mu ov \dot{\epsilon} \gamma \dot{\epsilon} \nu \epsilon \tau \sigma \delta i$  autov which means "the world was made through him". In this passage, Christ is seen as the intermediate agent of creation while God is the original agent.

#### When Impersonal Agent is indicated

When the agent is impersonal, the construction is the dative with or without the preposition  $\dot{\epsilon}v$ . For example, oi  $\ddot{\alpha}v\theta\rho\omega\pi\sigma\sigma\sigma\omega$   $\sigma\omega\zeta\sigma\nu\tau\alpha\sigma$   $\dot{\epsilon}v$   $\tau\omega\lambda\sigma\sigma\omega$  Mession which means "the men are being saved by the word of the Messiah".

# When no Agent is expressed

Sometimes, the passive is used without any agent indicated. An example is the simple word  $\dot{\epsilon}\gamma\epsilon$ ipεται which means "he is being raised up".

# **3.3 The Present Middle Indicative**

There is no equivalent of the Greek middle voice in the English language. In the middle voice, the subject is acting in such a way that it participates in the result of the action. The subject, at this point, rather than the action is the focal point or the point of emphasis. The middle voice in the Greek language is used in three different ways: the reflexive middle, the intensive middle and the reciprocal middle.

# The Reflexive Middle

This is the nearest to the basic idea of the middle voice. It is the one that pictures the result of the action directly to the agent. For example,  $\delta \, \check{\alpha} \nu \theta \rho \omega \pi \sigma \zeta \, \check{\epsilon} \gamma \epsilon i \rho \epsilon \tau \alpha \iota$  which means, "the man is raising himself up".

# The Intensive Middle

The intensive middle stresses the agent producing the action rather than its participation in the action. For example,  $\delta i \delta \delta \sigma \kappa \epsilon \tau \alpha i \tau \eta \nu \dot{\alpha} \lambda \eta \theta \epsilon i \alpha \nu$  which means "he is teaching the truth". The emphasis is on "he". The idea is that he and no other person is doing the teaching. This corresponds to the pi'el stem of the Hebrew language which is the dynamic middle voice.

# The Reciprocal Middle

In the reciprocal middle a plural subject that is engaged in an interchange of action is pictured. For example, oi  $\delta v \theta \rho \omega \pi \sigma i \delta i \delta \delta \sigma \kappa \sigma \tau \sigma i$  which means "the men are teaching one another". It has to be stated that the above three usages of the middle voice do not capture the total force of the middle voice but has given the general idea of the construction.

# **3.4 The Form of the Middle Voice**

It has to be stated that the forms of the middle voice in the present, imperfect and perfect tenses are the same as the passive voice. The difference is one of function. The context of the passage will indicate whether the construction is middle or passive in function. Thus, the form of the present middle indicative of  $\lambda \omega$  is:

λύομαι	I loose myself, or	λύομεθα	we loose ourselves, or
	I loose for myself		we loose for ourselves

λύη	you loose yourself, or	λύεσθε	you loose yourselves, or
	you loose for yourself		you loose for yourselves
λύεται	he, (she, it) looses himself, or	λύονται	they loose themselves, or
	he, (she, it) looses for himself		they loose for themselves

# 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit you have gone through the study of the present indicative verbs. You have been taught that in the present tense, two aspects of the verb that are present is the progressive action (kind) at the present time (time). Therefore, in its active voice, the present indicative would be translated using the present continuous tense. In its passive voice, the present continuous action is received by the subject also at the present time. You should note that the passive voice is used when the agent performing the action is indicated or not. Finally, in the middle voice, there are three significant usages: the reflexive, the intensive and the reciprocal.

# 5.0 Summary

The following are the major units you have learnt in this unit:

- Two aspects that are revealed in any tense are the kind and time of action. In the present, the action is progressive (kind) and the time is present (time).
- In its active voice, the present indicative would be translated using the present continuous tense.
- In its passive voice, the present continuous action is received by the subject also at the present time.
- In the middle voice, there are three significant usages: the reflexive, the intensive and the reciprocal.
- In the reflexive usage, the result of the action goes back directly to the agent.
- The intensive middle stresses the agent producing the action rather than its participation in the action.
- In the reciprocal middle a plural subject is engaged in an interchange of action.

# Self-Assessment Exercise

Identify the present indicative verbs in this passage and indicate whether they are active, passive or middle.

1 Ὁ πρεσβύτερος Γαΐῷ τῷ ἀγαπητῷ, ὃν ἐγὼ ἀγαπῶ ἐν ἀληθεία.

2 Άγαπητέ, περὶ πάντων εὕχομαί σε εὐοδοῦσθαι καὶ ὑγιαίνειν, καθὼς εὐοδοῦταί σου ἡ ψυχή.

**3** ἐχάρην γὰρ λίαν ἐρχομένων ἀδελφῶν καὶ μαρτυρούντων σου τῇ ἀληθείᾳ, καθὼς σὺ ἐν ἀληθείᾳ περιπατεῖς.

4 μειζοτέραν τούτων οὐκ ἔχω □χαράν, ἵνα ἀκούω τὰ ἐμὰ τέκνα ἐν □τῆ ἀληθεία περιπατοῦντα.

5 Άγαπητέ, πιστὸν ποιεῖς ὃ ἐἀν ἐργάσῃ εἰς τοὺς ἀδελφοὺς καὶ □τοῦτο ξένους,

6 οἳ ἐμαρτύρησάν σου τῆ ἀγάπῃ ἐνώπιον ἐκκλησίας, οὓς καλῶς ποιήσεις προπέμψας ἀξίως τοῦ θεοῦ·

7 ύπὲρ γὰρ τοῦ ὀνόματος ἐξῆλθον μηδὲν λαμβάνοντες ἀπὸ τῶν 🗆 ἐθνικῶν.

8 ήμεῖς οὖν ὀφείλομεν □ὑπολαμβάνειν τοὺς τοιούτους, ἵνα συνεργοὶ γινώμεθα τῆ ἀληθεία.

# 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Biyi & E. Ojo (2000). *Mastering the Greek New Testament*, Oyo: Multicrown Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.
- Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.
- Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# UNIT 3: THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

# Contents

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Objectives
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 The Use of the Imperfect Tense
  - 3.2 The Imperfect Active Indicative
  - 3.3 The Imperfect Middle and Passive Indicative
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References/Further Readings

# 1.0 Introduction

In the previous unit you have studied the present indicative verbs that are given the present continuous tense in translation to the English language. You have also seen

this tense in the active and the passive voices. In this unit however, we will be examining the imperfect indicative verbs which is used in the Greek language to express the continuous action in the past time. Take not of the changes in the translation and compare this with the present indicative tense on your own.

# 2.0 Intended Learning Objectives

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- Discuss the various usages of the imperfect tense
- Identify all the forms of the imperfect
- Write out the imperfect form of any verb

# 3.0 Main Content

# **3.1** The Use of the Imperfect Tense

The imperfect tense indicates continuous action in the past time. The imperfect active of  $\lambda \dot{\omega}$  would be translated "I was loosing". Though there are several expressions of the imperfect, it is always presented as the continuous action in the past. The emphasis however may differ. There are however three major occurrences:

# The Descriptive Imperfect

The descriptive imperfect is used to give a vivid representation of what was going on in past time. It usually draws a picture of the movement of events. A good example is Matthew 3:5-6 which reads thus:

Then Jerusalem was going out (ἐξεπορεύτο) to him, and they were being baptized (ἐβαπτίζοντο) in the Jordan River.

In the above quotation,  $\dot{\epsilon}\xi\epsilon\pi\rho\rho\epsilon\dot{\nu}\tau_0$  is the imperfect active while  $\dot{\epsilon}\beta\alpha\pi\tau$ i $\zeta$ ov $\tau_0$  is the imperfect middle or passive. The significance of these words can be seen vividly in the context of the passage.

# The Repeated or Iterative Imperfect

The repeated or iterative imperfect is used to show actions repeated in the past time. Unlike the descriptive imperfect which will denote one continuous action, the repeated imperfect will present an action that is done repeatedly. A good illustration is found in Acts 1:7 which reads:

They were asking him ( $\lambda \epsilon \gamma \circ v \tau \epsilon \varsigma$ ), Lord art thou at this time restoring the kingdom to Israel?

The phrase could also be rendered thus: "they kept on asking him". This implies that the disciples have asked Jesus the same question before frequently.

# The Inceptive Imperfect

The inceptive imperfect is also used to picture continuous action in the past. However, the emphasis is on the beginning of the action rather  $\delta\delta\delta\sigma\kappa\epsilon\nu$ , which is best translated "he began teaching them". This word is used to introduce the Sermon on the Mount also in Luke 5:3 and Mark 5:37.

# The Imperfect Active Indicative of $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$

The personal endings in the active secondary tenses are -v;  $-\varsigma$ ;  $vov\varepsilon$ ;  $-\mu\varepsilon v$ ;  $-\tau\varepsilon$ , -v. The variable vowel is o before an ending beginning with  $\mu$ , or v and it is  $\varepsilon$  before any other ending. The third person singular often take the movable v. You will also discover that the first person singular and the third person plural are identical and thus should be distinguished by the context.

Since we have been using  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  as our we will still use the word as long as it has a form in what is intended to discuss. The following is the imperfect active indicative of  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$ :

ἕλυον	I was loosing	ἐλύομεν	we were loosing
ἕλυες	you were loosing	ἐλύετε	you were loosing
ἕλυε	he, she, it, was loosing	ἕλυον	they were loosing

You will notice that in the above paradigm for the imperfect active indicative of  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  for the first time you will be seeing that there is a letter (vowel  $\epsilon$ ) before each form of the word. This letter is called an augment. In the Greek, this augment is in an indication that the word is a secondary tense. A secondary tense in the Greek is a tense that expresses a past time. This is why all the translations are given in the past tense in the English. This augment is peculiar to verbs that begin with a consonant. It is also called "syllabic augment" because it adds a syllable to the word. However, when the word begins with a vowel, the vowel is lengthened to the corresponding long vowel. This is called a "temporal augment". In the temporal augment,  $\epsilon$  becomes  $\eta$ ; o becomes  $\omega$  and  $\alpha$  will become  $\eta$  and not the long  $\alpha$  because it might not be differentiated easily. For example,  $\dot{\alpha}\kappa o\dot{\omega}$  becomes  $\ddot{\eta}\kappa ouv$ ,  $\dot{\epsilon}\gamma\epsilon i\rho\omega$  becomes  $\ddot{\eta}\gamma\epsilon i\rhoov$ .

# The Imperfect Active Indicative in Compound Verbs

In the case of compound verbs, the augment comes after the preposition and before the vowel stem. If the preposition ends with a vowel, the process of elision will take place. For example,  $\dot{\epsilon}\kappa\beta\dot{\alpha}\lambda\lambda\omega$  becomes  $\dot{\epsilon}\xi\dot{\epsilon}\beta\alpha\lambda\lambda\omega$ ;  $\dot{\alpha}\pi\kappa\tau\epsilon\dot{\nu}\omega$  becomes  $\dot{\alpha}\pi\epsilon\kappa\tau\epsilon\dot{\nu}\omega$ ;  $\dot{\alpha}\pi\dot{\alpha}\gamma\omega$  becomes  $\dot{\alpha}\pi\eta\gamma\omega$ . Note that in all the examples given, the accent is no longer on the preposition for any reason but it mat rest on the augment.

# The Imperfect Active Indicative of εἰμί

The imperfect active Indicative of είμί is:

ἤμην	I was	ἦμεν	we were
ἦς	you were	ἦτε	you were
ทุ้ง	he, (she, it) was	ἦσαν	they were

# The Imperfect Middle and Passive Indicative of $\lambda \dot{\upsilon} \omega$

The imperfect middle and passive voice are identical just as they are in the present tense. The difference is just that of the function they perform. Ensure that you note the differences in the translation of the imperfect middle and the imperfect passive.

Person	Singualar		Plural	
1st	ἐλυόμην	I was loosing myself	ἐλυόμεθα	we were loosing
		or for myself		ourselves or for ourselves
2nd	έλύου	you were loosing yourself or for yourself	έλύεσθε	you were loosing youselves or for youselves
3rd	έλύετο	he was loosing himself or himself	έλύοντο	they were loosing themselves or for themselves

# The Imperfect Middle Indicative of $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$ is as follows:

#### The Imperfect Passive Indicative of $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$ is as follows:

Person	Singualar		Plural	
1st	ἐλυόμην	I was being loosed	ἐλυόμεθα	we were being loosed
2nd	ἐλύου	you were being loosed	έλύεσθε	you were being loosed
3rd	έλύετο	he (she, it) was being loosed	έλύοντο	they were being loosed

# 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit you have studied the imperfect tense. You have been told that the imperfect tense is the tense that indicates continuous action in the past time. You have also been taught that there are three functions of the imperfect: the descriptive imperfect that is used to give a vivid description of what was going on in the past; the repeated or iterative imperfect that is used to show repeated actions in the past time and the inceptive imperfect that is used to lay emphasis on the beginning of an action in the past time. You have also studied the various forms of the imperfect: the imperfect: the imperfect middle and the imperfect passive indicative.

# 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points you have learnt in this unit:

- The imperfect tense is the tense that indicates continuous action in the past time.
- There are three functions of the imperfect: the descriptive, the iterative and the inceptive imperfect.
- The descriptive imperfect that is used to give a vivid description of what was going on in the past.
- The repeated or iterative imperfect that is used to show repeated actions in the past time.
- The inceptive imperfect that is used to lay emphasis on the beginning of an action in the past time.

# Self-Assessment Exercise

Identify the imperfect indicative verbs in this passage and indicate whether they are active, passive or middle (Ephesians 1:1-5):

Παῦλος ἀπόστολος □Χριστοῦ Ἰησοῦ□ διὰ θελήματος θεοῦ τοῖς ἀγίοις τοῖς οὖσιν
 □ ἐν Ἐφέσφ]□ καὶ πιστοῖς ἐν Χριστῷ Ἰησοῦ·

2 χάρις ὑμῖν καὶ εἰρήνη ἀπὸ θεοῦ πατρὸς ἡμῶν καὶ κυρίου Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ.

**3** Εύλογητὸς ὁ θεὸς καὶ πατὴρ τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ, ὁ εὐλογήσας ἡμᾶς ἐν πάσῃ εὐλογία πνευματικῃ ἐν τοῖς ἐπουρανίοις ἐν Χριστῷ,

4 καθώς ἐξελέξατο ἡμᾶς ἐν αὐτῷ πρὸ καταβολῆς κόσμου, εἶναι ἡμᾶς ἀγίους καὶ ἀμώμους κατενώπιον αὐτοῦ ἐν ἀγάπῃ,

5 προορίσας ήμᾶς εἰς υἰοθεσίαν διὰ Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ εἰς αὐτόν, κατὰ τὴν εὐδοκίαν τοῦ θελήματος αὐτοῦ

# 6.0 References/Further Readings

Adewale, Biyi & E. Ojo (2000). *Mastering the Greek New Testament*, Oyo: Multicrown Publishers

- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.

Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.

Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# UNIT 4: FUTURE ACTIVE AND FUTURE MIDDLE INDICATIVE

#### Contents

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 The Future Stem
  - 3.2 Stem Changes in Future Stems
  - 3.3 Time and Kind of Action in the Future Tense
  - 3.4 The Future Indicative of ἐιμί
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References/Further Readings

#### 1.0 Introduction

In the previous unit we dealt with the last aspect of the imperfect tense which deals with actions that took place in the past though having a continuous tense. In this unit, we will deal with the future indicative tense that has to do with actions taking place in the future. In this unit, both the future active and the future middle indicative verbs shall be considered.

# 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- identify any given future verb in any sentence
- write the future stem of all the verbs you have been given so far
- write the full persons and number of any given future verb
- discuss the changes in the future stem
- write the future indicative of the verb to be
- discuss the kinds of action in the future tense
- translate sample sentences in the future tense.

#### 3.0 Main Content

#### **3.1** The Future Stem

The future stem is obtained by adding s to the verb stem. For example, the verb stem of  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  is  $\lambda \dot{\omega}$ . When you add  $\sigma$ , it becomes  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \sigma$ . Note that this is a primary tense, therefore the primary active endings would be used for the future active and the primary middle tense would be used for the future middle. These endings are added to the stem through the use of the variable vowel (that is,  $\sigma$  and  $\varepsilon$ ) just like the present tense. Therefore, as you will observe below, the future active of  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  is just like the present active form expect for the suffix  $\sigma$ .

The following is the future active form for  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$ :

λύσω	I shall loose	λύσομεν	we shall loose
λύσεις	you will loose	λύσετε	you will loose
λύσει	he, she, it will loc	se λύσουσι	they will loose

#### The following is the future middle form for $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$ :

λύσομαι	I shall loose myself/for myself	λυσόμεθα	we shall loose ourselves
λύση	you will loose yourself	λύσεσθε	you will loose yourselves
λύσεται	he (she, it) will loose himself	λύσονται	they will loose themselves

Note that you have not been given the future passive. This is because it is built on a different stem entirely. The two are not to be confused because their meanings would be different. It will be studied later.

#### **3.2** Stem Changes in Future Stems

Note also that not all the stems of the future can be determined easily as that of  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$ . When the stem of the verb ends in a consonant, there are some changes that are bound to occur when the tense suffix  $\sigma$  is added to the stem. The chart that follows would give you an idea of the kind of changes that would take place generally. However, you have to know that this is by no means universal.

# Verbs ending in a liquid consonant $(\lambda, \mu, \nu, \rho)$

In this class of words, the  $\sigma$  that is added to the stem would be dropped and the  $\omega$  would be accented. This change is however due to some contraction principles that

would be learnt later in the course. The following are appropriate example: instead of μένσω you will have μένῶ; ἀποστέλλω also becomes ἀποστελλῶ.

# Verbs ending in a mute consonant

Note that mute consonants are divided into three classes: palatial, labial and dental.

In the case of palatal consonants ( $\kappa$ ,  $\gamma$ ,  $\chi$ ): the palatal consonants become  $\xi$  before  $\sigma$ ; hence  $\check{\alpha}\gamma\omega$  becomes  $\check{\alpha}\xi\omega$ .

In the case of labial consonants ( $\pi$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\phi$ ): the labial consonants become  $\psi$  before  $\sigma$ ; hence  $\beta\lambda\epsilon\pi\omega$  becomes  $\beta\lambda\epsilon\psi\omega$ .

In the case of dental consonants ( $\tau$ ,  $\delta$ ,  $\theta$ ): the dental consonants before  $\sigma$  drops out; hence  $\pi\epsilon i\theta \omega$  becomes  $\pi\epsilon i\sigma \omega$ . The same principle applies to sibilant consonants like  $\sigma$  and  $\zeta$ ; hence  $\sigma \omega \zeta \omega$  becomes  $\sigma \omega \sigma \omega$ .

# **Other Future Tenses Stem**

You also have to know that there are some future stems that are entirely different from these ones. This difference is due to the fact that the stem of the general verb and the stem of the present stem are not always the same. In  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  they are the same and this explains the similarity between the present and future tense. However, there are other verbs that are not similar. These include:  $\gamma \iota \omega \dot{\sigma} \kappa \omega$  the stem of which is  $\gamma \nu \omega$ . The future stem thus would be  $\gamma \nu \omega \sigma$ ; in the case of  $\kappa \eta \rho \dot{\sigma} \sigma \omega$  the stem is  $\kappa \eta \rho \nu \kappa$  - and so the future tense stem would be  $\kappa \eta \rho \nu \xi$  -. These differences account for the variety of differences between future stem forms. However, once the first person singular of the future is learned it is easy to know the remainder of the tense forms.

It is also important to know that some verbs are active in the present but in the future tense they become deponent. You should carefully observe this in the process of your vocabulary study. Examples however include  $\lambda \alpha \mu \beta \dot{\alpha} v \omega$  which has its future in the deponent as  $\lambda \dot{\eta} \mu \psi o \mu \alpha_i$ ; and  $\gamma_i v \dot{\omega} \sigma \kappa \omega$  is also deponent and has  $\gamma v \dot{\omega} \sigma o \mu \alpha_i$  as its future form.

# **3.3** Time and Kind of Action in the Future Tense

It is obvious that the time of action in the future tense is the future time. The kind of action can either be punctiliar or linear. The context will usually indicate which is intended. Most of the time however, it is punctiliar action because the most natural construction for indicating continuous action is the periphrastic future and this would be learnt later. The following however are the possible usages of the future tense:

# The Simple Predictive Future

This is the simple future that predicts what will happen as in  $\dot{\upsilon}\mu\tilde{\alpha}\zeta$   $\delta\imath\delta\dot{\alpha}\xi\epsilon\iota$ .

# The Imperative Future

The imperative (that is a command) may be expressed by the future as in: καλέσεις το ὄνομα αὐτοῦ Ἰωάνην that is, "you shall call his name John".

# The Deliberative Future

This is sometimes found when a rhetorical (this is a question to which one really expects no answer) question is being asked: Kúpie,  $\pi p \delta \zeta \tau i \nu \alpha \, d\pi \epsilon \lambda \epsilon \upsilon \sigma \delta \mu \epsilon \theta \alpha$ ; that is, "Lord, to whom shall we go?"

These three usages are the common ones that you will find in the New Testament. Other usages occur less frequently.

# **3.4** The Future Indicative of εἰμί

The future indicative of εἰμί is as follow:

ἔσομαι	I shall be	ἐσόμεθα	we shall be
ἔσῃ	you will be	<b>ἕσεσθε</b>	you will be
έσται	he (she, it) will be	ἔσονται	they will be

#### 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit you have been introduced to the future active and middle indicative tense in the Greek language. You have learnt that the future stem is formed by adding  $\sigma$  to the verb stem. The addition of  $\sigma$  to the stem of the verb would make some consonants to react by either changing their form or dropping out entirely. You are also taught that the future tense is used in three major ways in the Greek New Testament.

# 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points you have learnt in this unit:

- The future stem is formed by adding  $\sigma$  to the verb's stem
- The presence of s changes some consonants and some also drop out
- Some future verbs have their stem different from the present active indicative
- The future tense can be used in three ways: simple predictive future, the imperative and the deliberative future.

# Self-Assessment Exercise

Identify the future indicative verbs in this passage and indicate whether they are active, passive or middle.

**Revelation 1:7** Ἰδοὺ ἕρχεται μετὰ τῶν νεφελῶν, καὶ ὄψεται αὐτὸν πᾶς ὀφθαλμὸς καὶ οἴτινες αὐτὸν ἐξεκέντησαν, καὶ κόψονται ἐπ' αὐτὸν πᾶσαι αἱ φυλαὶ τῆς γῆς. ναί, ἀμήν.

**Revelation 1:8** Ἐγώ εἰμι τὸ Ἄλφα καὶ τὸ ϡ, λέγει κύριος, ὁ θεός, ὁ ὢν καὶ ὁ ἦν καὶ ὁ ἔρχόμενος, ὁ παντοκράτωρ.

**Revelation 1:9** Ἐγὼ Ἰωάννης, ὁ ἀδελφὸς ὑμῶν καὶ □συγκοινωνὸς ἐν τῆ θλίψει καὶ βασιλεία καὶ ὑπομονῆ □ἐν Ἰησοῦ, ἐγενόμην ἐν τῆ νήσῷ τῆ καλουμένῃ Πάτμῷ διὰ τὸν λόγον τοῦ θεοῦ □καὶ τὴν μαρτυρίαν □'Ἰησοῦ.

**Revelation 1:10** έγενόμην έν πνεύματι έν τῆ κυριακῆ ἡμέρα, καὶ ἤκουσα □ἀπίσω μου φωνὴν□ μεγάλην ὡς σάλπιγγος

**Revelation 1:11** λεγούσης· Ὁ βλέπεις γράψον εἰς βιβλίον καὶ πέμψον ταῖς ἑπτὰ ἐκκλησίαις, εἰς Ἐφεσον καὶ εἰς Σμύρναν καὶ εἰς Πέργαμον καὶ εἰς Θυάτειρα καὶ εἰς Σάρδεις καὶ εἰς Φιλαδέλφειαν καὶ εἰς Λαοδίκειαν.

# 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Biyi & E. Ojo (2000). *Mastering the Greek New Testament*, Oyo: Multicrown Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.

Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.

Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# UNIT 5: THE AORIST INDICATIVE CONTENTS

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 The Aorist
  - 3.2 Functions of the Aorist
  - 3.3 The First Aorist Active Indicative of λύω
  - 3.4 The First Aorist Middle Indicative of λύω
  - 3.5 The Second Aorist
  - 3.6 The Second Aorist Active Indicative of  $\lambda \epsilon i \pi \omega$
  - 3.7 The Second Aorist Middle Indicative of  $\lambda \epsilon i \pi \omega$
  - 3.8 The First Aorist Passive
  - 3.9 The Second Aorist Passive
  - 3.10 The Future Passive
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References/Further Readings

#### 1.0 Introduction

In the previous unit you have studied the future active and middle indicative closely. You must have taken note of the use of the  $\sigma$  in the future tenses and the formation of its various forms. In this unit, you would be examining the aorist tense which is used for the expression of the past action too like the imperfect. Please as you study this unit, not the differences between the imperfect and the aorist tense though they are both used for the past action.

#### 2.0 Intended Learning Outcome

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- Distinguish between the imperfect and the aorist indicative
- Distinguish between the first and the second aorist

- Identify any verb written in the first aorist
- Identify any verb written in the second aorist
- Distinguish between the formation of the aorist passive in first and second aorist

## 3.0 Main Content

## 3.1 The Aorist

In Greek as in English language, there are two ways to form the past tense. It is important to note that this does not mean that each verb has two ways of forming the past tense. Though some Greek verbs do have the two ways, it must be noted that such verbs are very rare.

The two ways of forming the past tense in the Greek are called the first and the second aorist. The Greek verbs that add the s to their stems are called the first aorist and the others that add the endings without the s are called the second aorist. Despite these differences in formation there is basically no difference between the two in terms of function.

The aorist is a secondary tense because it deals with the actions in the past time. It is therefore augmented just like the imperfect. Remember that in the augment, a stem beginning with a consonant takes the "syllabic augment" and the stem beginning with a vowel takes the "temporal augment".

As a secondary tense, the aorist takes secondary active endings in the active and secondary middle endings in the middle. The aorist passive is entirely different from the aorist middle in form as well as in function.

# **3.2** Functions of the Aorist

It has to be stated that the function of the aorist tense is a matter of tremendous importance. As stated earlier, the time of action is in the past and the kind of action is punctiliar. This is the major difference between the imperfect and the aorist. Remember that the imperfect indicates continuous action in the past (for example: I was loosing) but the aorist indicates a finished action in the past (for example: I loosed). The Greek aorist would correspond more to the simple past tense and the perfect tense of the English language. The use of the aorist tense however has many implications:

#### **Constative Aorist**

In this usage, the action is loooked upon in its entirety. For example,  $\dot{\epsilon}\beta\dot{\alpha}\pi\tau\iota\sigma\tau\epsilon\tau \dot{\sigma}\dot{\sigma}\zeta$  $\dot{\alpha}\nu\theta\rho\dot{\omega}\pi\sigma\sigma\sigma\omega$  would be interpreted "he baptized the men". You will notice that though the action may have covered considerable time, it would be presented as one act.

#### **Ingressive Aorist**

In this usage the aorist views the act as having occurred but emphasizes the initiation of the action. For example,  $\delta i \dot{\upsilon} \mu \tilde{\alpha} \zeta \dot{\varepsilon} \pi \tau \dot{\omega} \chi \varepsilon \upsilon \sigma \varepsilon$  would be translated "for your sakes he became poor". In this usage, the action is one and it is viewed from its inception.

# **Culminative Aorist**

The culminative aorist views the action as having occurred but emphasizes the end of the action or the state of being resulting from the action. For example,  $\tau \delta v \pi \rho \tilde{\omega} \tau ov \lambda \delta \gamma ov \dot{\epsilon} \pi \sigma \eta \sigma \delta \mu \eta v$  would be translated "the former treatise I have made". In this phrase, the act of writing is looked upon as one act, but the emphasis is on the finished product. Though in this function the aorist overlaps with the Greek perfect tense, the difference would be expatiated on during the study of the perfect tense. Note that there are other usages, but these are sparse in the New Testament Greek.

# 3.3 The First Aorist Active Indicative of $\lambda \dot{\upsilon} \omega$

ἕλυσα	I loosed	έλύσαμεν	we loosed
ἔλυσας	you loosed	έλύσαμεν	you loosed
ἕλυσε(ν)	he (she, it) loosed	έλύσαντο	they loosed

# 3.4 The First Aorist Middle Indicative of $\lambda\dot{\upsilon}\omega$

ἐλύσαμην	I loosed myself or for	e0lu/sameqa	we loosed ourselves for
	myself		ourselves
ἐλύσω	you loosed yourself or for yourself	ἐλύσασθε	you loosed yourselves or for yourselves
έλύσαντο	he (she, it) loosed himself or for himself	ἐλύσαντο	they loosed themselves or for themselves

Please note that it is easier for you to study all the changes in the word formation as part of the vocabulary. It is also important to remind you that because of the addition of s to the stem of the word, there would be changes in the word. In general, these changes would correspond to the ones studied earlier when the future stem was studied (you can go back and revise these changes now) but this is not a safe test. It is better to check a lexicon for the first person singular of the word after which it would be easier for you to list other forms.

#### **3.5** The Second Aorist

The second aorist as said earlier, is the kind of past tense in the Greek language that does not form the past tense by adding  $\sigma$  to the stem but alter the stem radically and then add the secondary personal endings. It has to be noted that there is no way to determine whether a Greek verb will take the first or the second aorist. You may need to check the lexicon to determine this. Once you have determined the form of aorist a verb will take, it would be easy for you to finish up the declension. Note however that there are very few irregular second aorist words, but for the most part they are very regular.

If you see a second aorist verb, to trace it back to the stem, follow the following steps:

First, strike off the secondary personal endings. For example, it will be on in the first person singular. Second, if it is a syllabic augment, remove the augment and if it is a temporal augment, shorten the vowel back to the normal short vowel. For example, to determine the stem of  $\xi\lambda\mu\sigma\nu$  remove the ov and the  $\varepsilon$  which is the augment and what you will have is  $\lambda\mu\tau$ .

You must know that the functions of the first and second aorist are exactly the same. The difference is only that of form. Consequently, with words that have the two forms of aorist, they mean the same thing. For example,  $\eta \nu \epsilon \gamma \kappa \alpha$  (first aorist) and  $\eta \nu \epsilon \gamma \kappa \sigma \nu$  (second aorist) forms of  $\phi \epsilon \rho \omega$  mean the same thing: "I bore or I brought". The following verbs should however be noted:

The verb  $\varepsilon i\delta \delta v$  is from the verb  $\varepsilon i\delta \alpha$  though some grammarians classify it as a second aorist form of  $\beta \lambda \dot{\epsilon} \pi \omega$ . The second aorist  $\varepsilon i \pi \sigma v$  is from the verb  $\varphi \eta \mu i$  though some grammarians classify it as a second aorist form of  $\lambda \dot{\epsilon} \gamma \omega$ . These verbs  $\varepsilon i \delta \sigma v$  and  $\varepsilon i \pi \sigma v$ in the New Testament usually has first aorist endings on the second aorist stem. You have to know also that there are some verbs that are deponent in the present tense but are active in the aorist. An example is  $\check{\epsilon} \rho \chi \rho \mu \alpha$  that has its aorist active as  $\check{\eta} \lambda \theta \sigma v$  and not  $\dot{\eta} \lambda \theta \delta \mu \eta v$ . As it has been said earlier you may need to check up confusing words in the lexicon to determine what their forms in the aorist would be.

# 3.6 The Second Aorist Active Indicative of $\lambda \epsilon i \pi \omega$

The second agrist is one of those tenses where  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  could no longer be used as our example. As a result, focus would be changed to the above word. The following is then the second agrist active of  $\lambda \epsilon i \pi \omega$ :

ἕλιπον	I left	ἐλίπομεν	we left
ἕλιπες	you left	έλίπετε	you left
ἔλιπε(ν)	he, she, it left	ἕλιπον	they left

#### **3.7** The Second Aorist Middle Indicative of $\lambda \epsilon i \pi \omega$

ἐλιπόμην	I left for myself	ἐλιπόμεθα	we left for ourselves
ἐλίπου	you left for yourself	ἐλίπεσθε	you left for yourselves
έλίπετο	he (she, it) left for himself	έλίποντο	they left for themselves

#### **3.8 The First Aorist Passive**

The first aorist passive has a tense suffix which is the syllable  $\theta_{\epsilon}$  but in the indicative it appears as  $\theta_{\eta}$ . As a secondary tense, the aorist passive is augmented in the normal way and takes the secondary personal endings which are added without the use of a connecting vowel. You have to note here that the secondary active endings are used even though this is the passive voice. This would be reflected in the example that would follow.

When the verb stem ends with a consonant there are various changes before the  $\theta\eta$  of the aorist passive. Following are the changes that are normally made; however, you need to check the lexicon until you have mastered the aorist passive form:

# **Liquid Consonants**

ν drops out before θ. For example, κρίνω becomes ἐκρίθην.

λ, ρ are retained before θ. For example, ἀγγέλλω becomes ἠγγέλθην. μ inserts η before  $\theta$ . For example, νέμω becomes ἐνεμήθην.

# **Mute Consonants**

# **Palatals**

κ, γ change to  $\chi$  before  $\theta$ . For example, ἄγω becomes ἤχθην and διώκω becomes ἐδιώχθην.

 $\chi$  is retained before θ. For example, διδάσκω becomes ἐδιδάχθην.

# Labials

π, β change to φ before θ. For example,  $\lambda \epsilon i \pi \omega$  becomes  $\epsilon \lambda \epsilon i \phi \theta \eta v$  and  $\tau \rho i \beta \omega$  becomes  $\epsilon \tau \rho i \phi \theta \eta v$ .

 $\phi$  elides the  $\theta$  and becomes second aorist. This would be discussed fully in the next section.

## **Dentals**

τ, δ, θ change to σ before θ. For example, πείθω becomes  $\dot{\epsilon}$ πείσθην.

#### Sibilants

Sibilants change to  $\sigma$  before  $\theta$ . For example,  $\beta \alpha \pi \tau i \zeta \omega$  becomes  $\dot{\epsilon} \beta \alpha \pi \tau i \sigma \theta \eta v$ .

#### **3.9 The Second Aorist Passive**

The second aorist passive is like the first aorist passive except for the absence of the  $\theta$ . Remember that the aorist passive of a verb cannot be determined by the aorist active. Some verbs like  $\gamma \rho \dot{\alpha} \phi \omega$  have the first aorist active and the second aorist passive. Others like  $\lambda \epsilon i \pi \omega$  have second aorist active and first aorist passive. However as far as function is concerned both first and second aorist passive are the same. They both indicate finished action received by the subject in the past time. The second aorist passive of  $\dot{\alpha} \pi \omega \tau \epsilon \lambda \lambda \omega$  is set out below:

ἀπεστάλην	I was sent	ἀπεστάλημεν we were sent	
ἀπεστάλης	you were sent	ἀπεστάλητε	you were sent
ἀπεστάλη	he (she, it) was sent	ἀπεστάλησαν they were sent	

#### **3.10 The Future Passive**

The future passive indicative is based on the aorist passive stem and this is why the study is delayed until you have understood the aorist passive stem. As a primary tense however, it will not take any augment and it will use primary passive personal endings. In addition to this, it will also take the future tense suffix ( $\sigma$ ) and the variable connecting vowel o or  $\varepsilon$ . In function, the future passive deals with action received by the subject in the future time. The following is the future passive of  $\lambda \dot{\omega}$ :

λυθήσομαι	I shall be loosed	λυθησόμεθα	we shall be loosed
λυθήσῃ	you will be loosed	λυθήσεσθε	you will be loosed
λυθήσεται	he (she, it) will be loosed	λυθήσονται	they will be loosed

You have to note that most deponent verbs vary in the aorist and future passive. Some have passive forms like  $\dot{\alpha}\pi\kappa\rho$ i/νομαι. In the aorist passive it is written as  $\dot{\alpha}\pi\kappa\rho$ i/θην "I answered". Some other verbs have both the passive and the middle forms in the aorist. An example of this is γίνομαι. It can appear as έγενόμην and as έγενήθην. Both are however translated "I became".

# 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit you have studied the aorist indicative verb. You have been taught that there are two ways of forming the aorist tense in the Greek language and these are known as the first and second aorist. You have also been taught that the aorist tense is a secondary tense and thus would use the augment whether the syllabic or the temporal augment. You have also been taught that unlike the imperfect, the aorist indicates a finished action in the past and would therefore correspond to the English simple past and perfect tense. The aorist has three functions: the constative function in which the past action is looked at in its entirety; the ingressive function which emphasizes the initiation of an action and the culminative action which emphasizes the end or the state of being resulting from the action. You have also looked at the formation of the various voices as well as the future passive because it is similar to the aorist passive in formation.

#### 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points you have learnt in this unit:

- There are two ways of forming the aorist tense in the Greek language and these are known as the first and second aorist.
- The aorist tense is a secondary tense and thus would use the augment whether the syllabic or the temporal augment.
- Unlike the imperfect, the aorist indicates a finished action in the past and would therefore correspond to the English simple past and perfect tense.
- The aorist has three functions: the constative function in which the past action is looked at in its entirety; the ingressive function which emphasizes the initiation of an action and the culminative action which emphasizes the end or the state of being resulting from the action.

- The first aorist is formed using the augment and adding the consonant  $\sigma$  while the second aorist does not use the consonant  $\sigma$ . The passive voice in the first aorist has a tense suffix  $\theta \epsilon$  while the  $\theta$  is absent from the second aorist.
- The future passive is built on the same stem as the aorist passive.

#### Self-Assessment Exercise

Identify the aorist indicative verbs in this passage and indicate whether they are first or second aorist and note if they are active or passive.

**Revelation 1:1** Άποκάλυψις Ίησοῦ Χριστοῦ, ἢν ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ ὁ θεὸς δεῖξαι τοῖς δούλοις αὐτοῦ, ἂ δεῖ γενέσθαι ἐν τάχει, καὶ ἐσήμανεν ἀποστείλας διὰ τοῦ ἀγγέλου αὐτοῦ τῷ δούλῷ αὐτοῦ Ἰωάννῃ,

**Revelation 1:2** ὃς ἐμαρτύρησεν τὸν λόγον τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ τὴν μαρτυρίαν Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ, ὅσα εἶδεν.

**Revelation 1:3** μακάριος ὁ ἀναγινώσκων καὶ οἱ ἀκούοντες τοὺς λόγους τῆς προφητείας καὶ τηροῦντες τὰ ἐν αὐτῇ γεγραμμένα, ὁ γὰρ καιρὸς ἐγγύς.

**Revelation 1:4** Ἰωάννης ταῖς ἑπτὰ ἐκκλησίαις ταῖς ἐν τῇ Ἀσία· χάρις ὑμῖν καὶ εἰρήνη ἀπὸ ὁ ὣν καὶ ὁ ἦν καὶ ὁ ἐρχόμενος, καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἑπτὰ πνευμάτων ἃ ἐνώπιον τοῦ θρόνου αὐτοῦ,

**Revelation 1:5** καὶ ἀπὸ Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ, ὁ μάρτυς ὁ πιστός, ὁ πρωτότοκος τῶν νεκρῶν καὶ ὁ ἄρχων τῶν βασιλέων τῆς γῆς.

Τῷ ἀγαπῶντι ἡμᾶς καὶ □λύσαντι ἡμᾶς □ἐκ τῶν ἁμαρτιῶν ἡμῶν ἐν τῷ αἴματι αὐτοῦ

#### 6.0 **References/Further Readings**

- Adewale, Biyi & E. Ojo (2000). *Mastering the Greek New Testament*, Oyo: Multicrown Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.

Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.

Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# Module 2

- Unit 1: Participles
- Unit 2: The Perfect Indicative
- Unit 3: The Subjunctive Mod
- Unit 4: The Imperative Mood
- Unit 5: Contract Verbs
- Unit 6: Pronouns

# UNIT 1: PARTICIPLES

# CONTENT

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Understanding the Participle
  - 3.2 Present Participles
  - 3.3 Characteristics of Participles
  - 3.4 Functions of Participles
  - 3.5 Aorist Participles
  - 3.6 Kind and Time of Action in Aorist Participles
  - 3.7 Temporal Use of the Participle
  - 3.8 Relative Use of the Participle
  - 3.9 The Genitive Absolute
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References/Further Readings

#### **1.0 INTRODUCTION**

Welcome to the study of Further Greek. In the last module you have been through a review of the major nouns and verbs that were studied in the undergraduate level. You will begin this module with the study of Participles. Participles are the forms of verbs that are used to form complex tenses. In this study of participles, you will examine how participles are formed in the Greek language, how they are used as well as their characteristics.

# 2.0 INTENDED LEARNING OUTCOMES

By the end of this first unit you should be able to:

- Explain what participles are
- Discuss the characteristics of participles
- Discuss the functions of participles
- Write the participles in the present, middle and passive forms.

# 3.0 Main Content

# **3.1 Understanding the Participle**

The participle is a verbal adjective. In other words, it carries the qualities of the verb and the adjective. The present active participle is declined like a third declension mute stem noun in the masculine and neuter and like a first declension s stem noun in the feminine. Below is the present active participle of  $\lambda \omega$ , which you must study carefully, noting the inflection and the accenting pattern. Following this pattern, you can form the present active participle of any regular verb.

#### **3.2 Present Participles**

Singular			
Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom. & Voc.	λύων	λύουσα	λύον
Gen. & Abl.	λύοντος	λύουσης	λύοντος
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λύοντι	λύουση	λύοντι
Accusative	λύοντα	λύουσαν	λῦον
	Pl	lural	
Nom. & Voc.	λύοντες	λύουσαι	λύοντα
Gen. & Abl.	λυόντων	λύουσῶν	λυόντων
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λύουσι(ν)	λύουσαις	λύουσι(ν)
Accusative	λύοντας	λύουσας	λύοντα

#### **Present Active Participle of** λύω:

By adding the  $\dot{\phi}\mu\epsilon\nu\sigma\zeta$ ,  $\eta$ ,  $\sigma\nu$  endings to any regular verb, you will get the present middle and passive forms of the present participle. The deponent verbs (if you don't remember what these are, go back and read the unit on deponent verbs in the CRS215 course material) will also use this system form their present participle.

#### Present Active Participle of ἐίμι:

Singular				
Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	
Nom. & Voc.	ὤv	οὖσα	ὄν	
Gen. & Abl.	ὄντος	οὕσης	ὄντος	
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	ὄντι	οὕσῃ	ὄντι	
Accusative	ὄντα	οὔσαν	ὄν	
	Plural			
Nom. & Voc.	ὄντες	οὖσαι	ὄντα	
Gen. & Abl.	ὄντων	οὐσῶν	ὄντων	

Dat., Loc. & Inst.	οບໍ້σι(ν)	οὕσαις	οὖσι(ν)
Accusative	ὄντας	οὕσας	ὄντα

# **3.3** Characteristics of Participles

As you have been told earlier, the participle combines the characteristics of the verb and the adjective. As a verb, it has tense and voice, it may take an object and it may be used as an adverbial modifier. As an adjective, it has case, gender and number; it may be used substantively, and it may also be used as an adjective modifier.

# **3.4 Functions of Participles**

The verbal function of the participle has to be noted in relation with the voice (active, middle and passive) and the tense, which has to do with the kind of action. The present participle indicates continuous action while the aorist participle indicates punctiliar action. In all, only four Greek tenses, namely: present, aorist, future and perfect has participles. You have to note that the time of action in participles is indicated in the relationship of the action of the participle to the action of the main verb. Note the following: The aorist participle indicates action that is antecedent to the action of the main verb. The present participle indicates action that is contemporaneous with the action of the main verb. The future participle indicates action which is subsequent to the action of the main verb. The perfect participle indicates action which has become a state of being. The following is an example of a present participle:

λέγων ταῦτα ở ἄνθρωπος βλέπει τὸν Κύριον which would be translated "while saying these things, the man sees the Lord". Another example is: διδασκόμενος ὑπο τοῦ Κθρίου ὁ ἄνθρωπος λαμβάνει τὴν ἀλήθειαν which would be translated "while being taught by the Lord, the man receives the truth" or "as the man is being taught by the Lord, he receives the truth".

The first of these examples, that is,  $\lambda \dot{\epsilon} \gamma \omega \nu \tau \alpha \tilde{\upsilon} \tau \alpha \dot{\sigma} \dot{\alpha} \nu \theta \rho \omega \pi \sigma \varsigma \beta \lambda \dot{\epsilon} \pi \epsilon_1 \tau \dot{\upsilon} \nu K \dot{\upsilon} \rho \iota \upsilon \nu$ , illustrates the characteristics of a participle, the ability to carry a direct object. In the construction,  $\tau \alpha \tilde{\upsilon} \tau \alpha$  is the accusative and this means that it is the direct object of the participle  $\lambda \dot{\epsilon} \gamma \omega \nu$ .

#### The Participle as an Adverbial Modifier

The following is an example of how the participle can be used as an adverbial modifier. ἐρχόμενοι ἐκήρυσσον τὸ εὐαγγέλιον which would be translated "as they were going, they were preaching the gospel". In this case, the participle modifies the verb and tells when they were preaching. As an adverbial modifier, the participle may tell when, how, why, on what condition, by what means, or under what circumstances an action took place. This function would be studied in greater details during the lesson on subordinate clauses.

#### The Adjectival Function of a Participle

As an adjective, the participle would have to agree with the noun it is modifying in gender, number and case. As an adjective, the participle can also be used

substantively. For example,  $\delta \lambda \delta \omega v$  would mean "the loosing man" or "the man who looses," or "he who looses". Care has to be taken when the participle is used in this way that the relative translation is followed so that the full significance of the construction is given. Check out the examples below:

Sentence	Translation
βλέπω τὸν λέγοντα ταῦτα	I see the one who is saying these things.
ἕβλεψα τὸν λέγοντα ταῦτα	I saw the one who was saying these
	things.
βλέπω τοὺς λέγοντα ταῦτα	I see the men who are saying these
	things, or I saw those who are saying
	these things
βλέπω τὸν ἀδέλφον τῆς λεγούσης ταῦτα	I see the brother of the woman who is
	saying these things

In its function as an adjective, the participle may also be used as an adjectival modifier. In this construction, the participle is always in the attributive position with the noun and it is usually the longer of the two possible forms. For example,  $\delta \lambda \hat{\epsilon} \gamma \omega v \dot{\alpha} \pi \delta \sigma \tau \delta \lambda \varsigma \sigma v \phi \dot{\alpha} \pi \delta \sigma \tau \delta \lambda \varsigma \phi v$  would mean "the saying apostle" the second which is longer would be used in this case. This is the case in  $\dot{\delta} \dot{\alpha} \pi \delta \sigma \tau \delta \lambda \varsigma \phi v \tau \alpha \delta \tau \phi$  which would read "the apostle who is saying these things".

This thus brings us to a very important issue in the function of participles. When the participle is in the attributive position, that is it carries the article, it has to be given a relative translation as in "the one who". However, when the participle is in the predicate position, that is, it does not carry the article, it is given a temporal translation as in "while" or "as". This is seen in the examples below:

ἕβλεψα τὸν ἀπόστολον λέγοντα ταῦτα would be translated "I saw the apostle while he was saying these things".

ἕβλεψα τὸν ἀπόστολον τὸν λέγοντα ταῦτα would be translated "I saw the apostle who was saying these things".

# **3.5 Aorist Participles**

#### The first aorist active participle of $\lambda\dot{\omega}\omega$ is:

Singular			
Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom. & Voc.	λύσας	λύσασα	λῦσαν
Gen. & Abl.	λύσαντος	λυσάσης	λύσαντος
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λύσαντι	λυσάσῃ	λύσαντι
Accusative	λύσαντα	λύσασαν	λῦσαν
	Plu	ıral	
Nom. & Voc.	λύσαντες	λύσασαι	λύσαντα
Gen. & Abl.	λυσάντων	λυσασῶν	λυσάντων
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λύσασι(ν)	λυσάσαις	λύσασι(ν)
Accusative	λύσαντας	λυσάσας	λύσαντα

# The first aorist middle participle of λύω is:

Singular			
Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom. & Voc.	λυσάμενος	λυσαμένη	λυσάμενον
Gen. & Abl.	λυσαμένου	λυσαμένης	λυσαμένου
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λυσαμένῷ	λυσαμένη	λυσαμένῷ
Accusative	λυσάμενον	λυσαμένην	λυσάμενον
	Р	lural	
Nom. & Voc.	λυσάμενοι	λυσάμεναι	Λυσάμενα
Gen. & Abl.	λυσαμένων	λυσαμένων	Λυσαμένων
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λυσαμένοις	λυσαμέναις	Λυσαμένοις
Accusative	λυσαμένους	λυσαμένας	Λυσάμενα

The second aorist active participle of  $\lambda \epsilon i \pi \omega$  is:

Singular			
Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom. & Voc.	λιπών	λιποῦσα	Λιπόν
Gen. & Abl.	λιπόντος	λιπούσης	Λιπόντος
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λιπόντι	λιπούση	Λιπόντι
Accusative	λιπόντα	λιποῦσαν	Λιπόν
	Plu	ıral	
Nom. & Voc.	λιπόντες	λιπομένη	Λιπόντα
Gen. & Abl.	λιπόντων	λιπομένης	Λιπόντων
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λιποῦσι(ν)	λιπομένη	λιποῦσι(ν)
Accusative	λιπόντας	λιπομένην	Λιπόντας

The second aorist middle participle of  $\lambda \epsilon i \pi \omega$  is:

Singular					
Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter		
Nom. & Voc.	λιπόμενος	λιπομένη	Λιπόμενον		
Gen. & Abl.	λιπομένου	λιπομένης	Λιπομένου		
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λιπομένω	λιπομένη	λιπομένω		
Accusative	λιπόμενον	λιπομένην	Λιπόμενον		
	P	lural			
Nom. & Voc.	λιπόμενοι	λιπόμεναι	Λιπόμενα		
Gen. & Abl.	Gen. & Abl. λιπομένων λιπομένων Διπομένων				
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λιπομένοις	λιπομέναις	Λιπομένοις		
Accusative	λιπομένους	λιπομένας	Λιπόμενα		

As you would have noticed, the aorist participle is formed on the aorist stem, but it did not carry any augment. The first aorist active participle has the  $\sigma\alpha$ - tense suffix added to the stem. After this, the participle is declined in masculine and neuter like a mute stem noun of the third declension and in the feminine like a  $\sigma$  stem noun of the first declension.

The first aorist middle consists of the aorist stem plus the middle participle suffix  $(\mu\epsilon v)$  plus the second declension endings in masculine and neuter and first declension endings in the feminine. This is to say that the first aorist middle participle is like the present middle participle except for the suffix  $\sigma\alpha$ - added to the stem.

The second aorist participle is built on the second aorist stem. It is declined exactly like the present participle except that in the second aorist active participle the accent is irregular. The accent is on the ultima in the nominative masculine singular and thereafter follows the noun rule. You can compare the accent in the above paradigm with the present participles.

# 3.6 Kind and Time of Action in Aorist Participles

The kind of action in the aorist as had been said earlier is punctiliar, that is, it is a finished action. The time of the action is antecedent to the action of the main verb. In verbs other than the indicative mood, the stress is on the kind of action. This is the reason behind the absence of the augment in participles, infinitives and subjunctives because it indicates the action in past time.

The use of the participle with or without the article is similar to that of the present participles. You can revise it again. In translating the present participles, good English expression should be used. For example,  $\lambda \dot{\upsilon} \sigma \alpha \varsigma$  would be translated "having loosed" or "when he had loosed" or "after he had loosed" while  $\dot{\upsilon} \lambda \dot{\upsilon} \sigma \alpha \varsigma$  would be translated "the one who loosed" or "he who loosed". Note the following examples, especially the temporal or relative use and the relation of the action of the participle to that of the main verb:

Greek Sentence	English Translation	
ό άνθρωπος είπών ταῦτα βλέπει τὸν	The man, having said these things, is	
Κύριον.	seeing the Lord.	
εἰπὼν ταῦτα ἐξῆλθεν ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου.	Having said these things (After he had	
	said/When he had said), he went out of	
	the house.	
ό ἄνθρωπος ό είπὼν ταῦτα ἦλθεν εἰς τὸν	The man who had said these things went	
οἴκον.	into the house.	
ό εἰπὼν ταῦτα ἦλθεν εἰς τὸν οἶκον. The man who (He who) had sa		
	things went into the house.	

#### *The aorist passive participle of* λύω *is:*

Singular				
Case Masculine Feminine Neuter				
<b>Nom. &amp; Voc.</b> λυθείς λυθεῖσα λυθέν				
Gen. & Abl. λυθέντος λυθείσης λυθέντος				

Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λυθέντι	λυθείση	λυθέντι	
Accusative	λυθέντα	λυθεῖσαν	λυθέν	
	Plural			
Nom. & Voc.	λυθέντες	λυθεῖσαι	λυθέντα	
Gen. & Abl.	λυθέντων	λυθεισῶν	λυθέντων	
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λυθεῖσι	λυθείσαις	λυθεῖσι	
Accusative	λυθέντας	λυθείσας	λυθέντα	

As shown above, the aorist passive participle is formed following the example above. In doing this, the augment would be dropped, and the corresponding endings would be added. Note however that it is only the first aorist that would have the  $\theta$  as a tense suffix and not the second aorist.

The aorist passive participle is used like the other participles. The kind of action is punctiliar and the time of action is antecedent to that of the main verb. The voice however indicates that the subject receives the action. The participle may be translated in several ways:

Greek Sentence	English Translation
ό λυθεὶς ἄνθρωπος ἐξῆλθεν ἐκ τοῦ	The man who was loosed went out of the
ວ້ເຮວນ.	house or The man who had been loosed
	went out of the house.
σωθεὶς δοξάσει τὸν Κύριον.	Having been saved, he will praise the
	Lord or After he has been saved, he will
	praise the Lord.

You must note that the use of the word in its context must determine the translation.

#### **3.7 Temporal Use of the Participle (without the article)**

Tense	Voice	Participle	Translation
	Active	Λύων	Loosing; while
Present			loosing; as he was
			loosing
	Middle	λυόμενος	Loosing for himself;
			while loosing for
			himself; as he was
			loosing for himself
	Passive	λυόμενος	Being loosed; while
			being loosed; as he
			was being loosed
Aorist	Active	Λύσας	Having loosed; after
			he had loosed; when
			he had loosed
	Middle	λυσάμενος	Having loosed for
			himself, after he had
			loosed for himself,
			when he had loosed

		for himself
Passive	ε Λυθείς	Having been loosed;
		when he was loosed;
		when he has been
		loosed; after he was
		loosed; after he has
		been loosed; after he
		had been loosed

# 3.8 Relative Use of the Participle

Tense	Voice	Participle	Translation
	Active	ό λύων	He who looses; the
Present			man who looses; the
			one who looses
	Middle	ό λυόμενος	He who looses for
			himself; the man who
			looses for himself;
			the one who looses
			for himself
	Passive	ό λυόμενος	He who is being
			loosed; the man who
			is being loosed; the
			one who is being
			loosed
Aorist	Active	ό λύσας	He who loosed; the
			man who loosed; the
			one who loosed (or
			has loosed/had
			loosed)
	Middle	ό λυσάμενος	He who loosed for
			himself; the man who
			loosed for himself;
			the one who loosed
			for himself (or has
			loosed/had loosed)
	Passive	ὁ λυθείς	He who was loosed;
			the man who was
			loosed; the one who
			was loosed (or has
			loosed/had loosed)

## 3.9 The Genitive Absolute

The genitive absolute is found frequently in the Greek New Testament. It is a kind of construction which has a very loose connection with the main part of the sentence. It

is usually composed by a participle and a noun (or pronoun) connected with it. When the subject of the main verb is different from the noun or pronoun used with the participle, then the noun and pronoun of the participle are put in the genitive case. Examine the two sentences below:

Greek Sentence	English Translation	
εἰπόντες ταῦτα οἱ ἀπόστολοι ἀπὴλθον.	Having said these things, the apostles	
	went away.	
εἰπόντων ταῦτα τῶν μαθητῶν οἱ	The disciples, having said these things,	
ἀπόστολοι ἀπῆλθον.	the apostles went away.	

You will note that in the first sentence, the subject of the sentence (apostle) has a direct connection with the participle; hence the subject is in the nominative case. In the second sentence, there is no direct connection between the participle and the subject of the sentence (apostles). That is, the ones doing the saying and the ones doing the going away are different group of people. The participle (having said) and its noun (the disciples) are therefore absolute; hence they are separated from the main part of the sentence and are in the genitive case.

# 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit, you have explored the participles. You have been told that the participles are verbal adjectives, that is, they behave like the verb and the adjective. As verbs, you have been told that participles have tense and voice, they can take the object and may be used as adjectival modifiers. As adjectives, participles have case, gender and number. You have also been shown the various examples of the use of participles in the attributive position (where it has a relative translation) and in the predicative (where it has a temporal translation). You have also been taught the genitive absolute which is a frequent construction in the Greek New Testament, and it is made up of a participle and a noun.

#### **5.0 SUMMARY**

The following are the major points that you have learnt in this unit:

- Participles are verbal adjectives, that is, they behave like the verb and the adjective.
- As verbs, you have been told that participles have tense and voice, they can take the object and may be used as adjectival modifiers.
- As adjectives, participles have case, gender and number.
- In the attributive position participles would take a relative translation.
- In the predicative position participles would take a temporal translation.
- The genitive absolute is a frequent construction in the Greek New Testament which is made up of a participle and a noun.

#### Self-Assessment Exercise

Identify the participles in this passage and indicate whether they are present or aorist and the position in which they are used.

**1:1** Παῦλος καὶ Σιλουανὸς καὶ Τιμόθεος τῆ ἐκκλησία Θεσσαλονικέων ἐν θεῷ πατρὶ καὶ κυρίῷ Ἰησοῦ Χριστῷ· χάρις ὑμῖν καὶ □εἰρήνη.

2 Εὐχαριστοῦμεν τῷ θεῷ πάντοτε περὶ πάντων ὑμῶν □μνείαν ποιούμενοι ἐπὶ τῶν προσευχῶν ἡμῶν, ἀδιαλείπτως

3 μνημονεύοντες ὑμῶν τοῦ ἔργου τῆς πίστεως καὶ τοῦ κόπου τῆς ἀγάπης καὶ τῆς ὑπομονῆς τῆς ἐλπίδος τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ πατρὸς ἡμῶν,

4 εἰδότες, ἀδελφοὶ ἠγαπημένοι ὑπὸ 🗆 θεοῦ, τὴν ἐκλογὴν ὑμῶν,

5 ὅτι τὸ εὐαγγέλιον ἡμῶν οὐκ ἐγενήθη εἰς ὑμᾶς ἐν λόγῷ μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐν δυνάμει καὶ ἐν πνεύματι ἁγίῷ □καὶ πληροφορία πολλῆ, καθὼς οἴδατε οἶοι ἐγενήθημεν □ἐν ὑμῖν δι' ὑμᾶς·

# 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.
- Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.
- Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# Unit 2: The Perfect Indicative

# Contents

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 The Perfect Active Tense
  - 3.2 The Perfect Middle Indicative
  - 3.3 The Perfect Active Participle
  - 3.4 The Perfect Middle and Passive Participle
  - 3.5 The Perfect Infinitive
  - 3.6 Reduplication in the Perfect Tense
  - 3.7 Characteristics of the Perfect Tense
  - 3.8 Functions of the Perfect Tense
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References/Further Readings

# 1.0 Introduction

In the earlier unit, you have studied the present tense, the imperfect tense and the aorist tense. You have been told that the present tense concerns an ongoing action in the present; the imperfect is an ongoing action in the past time and the aorist concerns specific action in the past time which at times may have its result having a present effect. In this unit you would be focusing attention on the last of the Greek tenses, the perfect tense.

# 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, you should be able to:

- Identify any verb in the perfect tense
- List the characteristics of the perfect tense
- Write the perfect tense in any of the voices
- List the functions of the perfect tense

# 3.0 Main Content

#### **3.1** The Perfect Active Tense

The perfect active indicative of  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  is:

λέλυκα	I have loosed	λελύκαμεν	We have loosed
λέλυκας	You have loosed	λελύκατε	You (p) have loosed
λέλυκε(ν)	He has loosed	λελύκασαι or λέλυκαν	They have loosed

# **3.2 The Perfect Middle Indicative**

λέλυμαι	I have loosed for	λελύμεθα	We have loosed for
	myself		ourselves
λέλυσαι	You have loosed	λελύσθε	You (p) have
	for yourself		loosed for
			yourselves
λέλυται	He has loosed for	λελύνται	They have loosed
	himself		for themselves

The perfect middle indicative of  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  is:

The perfect passive indicative of  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  is:

λέλυμαι	I have loosed for myself	λελύμεθα	We have loosed for ourselves
λέλυσαι	You have loosed for yourself	λελύσθε	You (p) have loosed for yourselves
λέλυται	He has loosed for himself	λελύνται	They have loosed for themselves

# **3.3** The Perfect Active Participle

The perfect active participle of  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  is:

Singular			
Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	λελυκώς	λελυκυῖα	λελυκός
Gen. & Abl.	λελυκότος	λελυκυίας	λελυκότος
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λελυκότι	λελυκυία	λελυκότι
Accusative	λελυκότα	λελυκυῖαν	λελυκός
Plural			
Nom. & Voc.	λελυκότες	λελυκυῖαι	λελυκότα
Gen. & Abl.	λελυκότων	λελυκυιῶν	λελυκότων
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λελυκόσι(ν)	λελυκυίαις	λελυκόσι(ν)
Accusative	λελυκότας	λελυκυῖας	λελυκότα

# 3.4 The Perfect Middle and Passive Participle

The perfect middle and passive participle of  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  is:

Singular			
Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	λελυμένος	λελυμένη	λελυμένον

Gen. & Abl.	λελυμένου	λελυμένης	λελυμένου
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λελυμένω	λελυμένη	λελυμένω
Accusative	λελυμένον	λελυμένην	λελυμένον
Plural			
Nom. & Voc.	λελυμένοι	λελυμέναι	λελυμένα
Gen. & Abl.	λελυμένων	λελυμένων	λελυμένων
Dat., Loc. & Inst.	λελυμένοις	λελυμέναις	λελυμένοις
Accusative	λελυμένους	λελυμένας	λελυμένα

#### **3.5 The Perfect Infinitive**

The perfect infinitives of  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  is:

Active	λελυκέναι	To have loosed
Middle	<b>λελύσθαι</b>	To have loosed for oneself
Passive	<b>λελύσθαι</b>	To have been loosed

#### **3.6 Reduplication in the Perfect Tense**

As you would have noticed in the above paradigms, the most striking characteristic of the perfect tense of the Greek language is the reduplication of the stem. The following are the ways by which the reduplication can take place:

- a. Under normal conditions, the initial consonant is doubled and an epsilon (e) is inserted between the two. For example, the reduplicated stem for λύω is λελυ-; for γράφω it is γεγραθ- and for γίνομαι, it is γεγνον-. This is the most frequent form of reduplication.
- b. Verb stems beginning with  $\varphi$ ,  $\theta$  or  $\chi$  are reduplicated with the smoother consonants  $\pi$ ,  $\tau$ , and  $\kappa$  respectively. For example,  $\theta \nu \eta \sigma \kappa \omega$  becomes  $\tau \epsilon \theta \nu \eta \kappa \alpha$ .
- c. As usual, verb stems beginning with a vowel lengthen the vowel to form the reduplication. For example,  $\epsilon \lambda \pi i \zeta \omega$  will become  $\eta \lambda \pi \iota \kappa \alpha$ .
- d. Verb stems beginning with two consonants sometimes reduplicate by prefixing an ε like an augment in the aorist. For example, the perfect of γινώσκω is ἕγνωκα.

You have to note that the only safe way to learn the correct perfect form for a verb is to check the word in the lexicon. The perfect active stem is the fourth principal part in the lexicon.

#### **3.7** Characteristics of the Perfect Tense

The major sign of the perfect tense is  $\kappa$ . it has to be noted however that there are some perfect tenses like  $\gamma \epsilon \gamma \circ \nu \alpha$  that did not have the  $\kappa$ . These ones are called second perfects. Note however that the use of the  $\kappa$  is the usual sign.

When a verb stem ends in a consonant, some changes would take place. For example, verb stems ending in  $\tau$ ,  $\delta$ , or  $\theta$  would drop the consonant before the  $\kappa$  of the perfect. These changes are also best learned by observation in the lexicon.

The perfect tense is a primary tense. However, because of the nature of its functions, it uses the secondary personal endings. The endings are the same as those of the first aorist except in the third personal plural form where  $-\kappa\alpha\sigma\iota$  is more frequent than  $-\kappa\alpha\nu$ .

Examine the accent system in the paradigms above. You will discover that it is very irregular unlike the other tenses. The irregular accent is one of the most certain ways of identifying the perfect tense of a verb.

Finally, you also need to note that the perfect middle and passive forms employ no connecting vowel. The endings are added directly to the stem as in  $\lambda \epsilon \lambda \nu \mu \alpha \iota$ ,  $\lambda \epsilon \lambda \dot{\upsilon} \sigma \theta \alpha \iota$  and  $\lambda \epsilon \lambda \nu \mu \dot{\epsilon} v \sigma \varsigma$ .

# **3.8** Functions of the Perfect Tense

As you have been told earlier, the Greek perfect tense has no corresponding tense in English language. Though you may have to translate with the English past tense, they however do not express the full force of the Greek perfect tense. The perfect tense is the Greek tense of completed action with a resultant state of being. Three ideas are involved in this: an action in progress, its coming to a point of culmination and an existing completed result.

The Greek perfect is better seen in the passive voice than in the active voice. For example,  $\gamma \epsilon \gamma \rho \alpha \pi \tau \alpha i$  can be translated "it has been written" but it is better translated "it is written". In fact, "it is written" pictures an act in progress, the point of culmination and an existing completed result. This is the same sense in  $\epsilon \gamma \eta \gamma \epsilon \rho \tau \alpha i$  which means "he is risen".

# 4.0 Conclusion

The perfect tense is easily identified with its reduplicated stem and the inserted  $\varepsilon$ . For example, the reduplicated stem for  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$  is  $\lambda \epsilon \lambda \upsilon$ ; for  $\gamma \rho \dot{\alpha} \varphi \omega$  it is  $\gamma \epsilon \gamma \rho \alpha \varphi$ - and for  $\gamma \dot{\nu} \omega \mu \alpha \iota$ , it is  $\gamma \epsilon \gamma \upsilon \upsilon$ . This is the most frequent form of reduplication. Verb stems beginning with  $\varphi$ ,  $\theta$  or  $\chi$  are reduplicated with the smoother consonants  $\pi$ ,  $\tau$ , and  $\kappa$  respectively as in  $\theta \upsilon \dot{\eta} \sigma \kappa \omega$  becomes  $\tau \dot{\epsilon} \theta \upsilon \eta \kappa \alpha$ .

Verb stems beginning with a vowel lengthen the vowel to form the reduplication. For example,  $\dot{\epsilon}\lambda\pi$ ίζω will become ἤλπικα. Verb stems beginning with two consonants sometimes reduplicate by prefixing an e like an augment in the aorist. For example, the perfect of γινώσκω is ἕγνωκα.

Remember that the Greek perfect tense has no corresponding tense in English language. The perfect tense is the Greek tense of completed action with a resultant

state of being. Three ideas are involved in this: an action in progress, its coming to a point of culmination and an existing completed result.

# 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points that you have learnt in this unit:

- The perfect tense is easily identified with its reduplicated stem and the inserted  $\epsilon$ .
- The use of consonant  $\kappa$  is the major characteristic of the perfect tense.
- The Greek perfect tense has no corresponding tense in English language.
- The perfect tense is the Greek tense of completed action with a resultant state of being.
- Three ideas are involved in this: an action in progress, its coming to a point of culmination and an existing completed result.

# Self-Assessment Exercise

Translate the following sentences to English:

- 1. τὰ γεγραμμένα ἐν τῶ βιβλίῷ τοῦ νόμου ἐστὶν ἀγαθά.
- 2. ὁ προφήτης εὐηγγελίσατο λέγων ὅτι ἡ βασιλεία τῶν οὐρανῶν ἤγγικεν.
- 3. ἀκηκόαμεν τὴν ἀλήθειαν καὶ ἐγνώκαμεν ὅτι ἀπὸ τοῦ Θεοῦ ἐστίν.
- 4. γεγόνατε τὰ τέκνα τοῦ Θεοῦ.
- 5. χάριτι ἐστε σεσωσμένοι διὰ πίστεως.
- 6. ἐγὼ ἐλήλυθα ἐν τῶ ὀνόματι τοῦ πατρός μου καὶ ὑμεῖς οὐ δέχεσθἐ με.
- 7. πεπιστεύκαμεν καὶ ἐγνώκαμεν ὅτι σὺ εἶ ὁ ἅγιος τοῦ Θεοῦ.
- 8. ταῦτα εἶπεν ὁ Ἰησοῦς πρὸς τοὺς πεπιστευκότας εἰς αὐτόν.
- 9. ήδη τὸ πνεῦμα τὸ ἅγιον ἐλήλυθεν εἰς τὸν κόσμον.
- 10. οἱ βεβαπτισμένοι μαθηταί εἰσιν ἐν τῆ ἐκκλησία

# 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.
- Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.
- Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# UNIT 3: THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

# Contents

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Vocabulary Study
  - 3.2 The Subjunctive Mood
  - 3.3 Forms of the Subjunctive Mood
  - 3.4 The Subjunctive Mood of the Greek New Testament

- 3.5 Functions of the Subjunctive Mood
- 3.6 Conditional Sentences
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References/Further Readings

# 1.0 Introduction

In the previous unit you have completed the study of the main verb that you have taken in the undergraduate days, namely, the indicative tense. Before you continue this study, you may have to revise all that you have studied under the indicative tense. Form this unit; you would be introduced to other verbal forms, beginning with the subjunctive mood.

# 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, you should be able to:

- Identify the subjunctive tense in all its usages.
- Write the subjunctive form of είμι.
- Write the subjunctive form of any other verb.
- List and explain the functions of the subjunctive mood.
- Identify the four classes of conditional sentences.

# 3.0 Main Content

# 3.1 Vocabulary Study

δικαιοσύνη, ή	righteousness
εὐαγγελίζομαι	I preach the gospel
μαρτυρία, ή	witness, testimony
οἰκία, ἡ	house
παιδιόν, τό	child

ἐάν (when used with the subjunctive) if
εἰ (when used with the indicative) if
ἵνα (when used with the subjunctive) in order that, that

# 3.2 The Subjunctive Mood

The subjunctive mood is used only in the present and the aorist tense in the New Testament Greek. However, there are few occurrences in the perfect tense. It is the most regular of all moods because it has the tense stem and the forms of the present subjunctive of eiu. You need to be informed that you will not be given any English translation of the forms that follows because it is difficult to translate the subjunctive mood outside its context. However, in the discussions that follows you will have many translations as its context would be discussed.

# 3.3 Forms of the Subjunctive Mood

 $\begin{array}{ccc} The \ present \ subjunctive \ of \ \epsilon i \mu \ is: \\ \tilde{\omega} & \tilde{\omega} \mu \epsilon \nu \\ \tilde{\eta} \varsigma & \tilde{\eta} \tau \epsilon \\ \tilde{\eta} & \tilde{\omega} \sigma \iota (\nu) \end{array}$ 

# The present active subjunctive of $\lambda \acute{\omega} \omega$ is:

λύω	λύωμεν
λύης	λύητε
λύη	λύωσι(ν)

## The first aorist subjunctive of $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$ is:

λύσω	λύσωμεν
λύσης	λύσητε
λύση	λύσωσι(ν)

## The second aorist subjunctive of $\lambda \epsilon i \pi \omega$ is $\lambda i \pi \omega$ :

λίπω	λίπωμεν
λίπης	λίπητε
λίπη	λίπωσι(ν)

# The present middle and passive subjunctive of $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$ is:

λύωμαι	λυώμεθα
λύη	λύησθε
λύηται	λύωνται

#### The first aorist middle subjunctive of $\lambda \acute{\omega} \omega$ is:

λύσωμαι	λυώμεθα
λύση	λύσησθε
λύσηται	λύσωνται

#### The second aorist middle subjunctive of $\lambda \epsilon i \pi \omega$ is:

λίπωμαι	λίπωμεθα
λίπη	λίπησθε
λίπηται	λίπησθε

#### The first a orist passive subjunctive of $\lambda \acute{\upsilon} \omega$ is:

λυθῶμεν

λυθῆ	λυθητε
λυθη	λυθῶσι(ν)

Please note that any second aorist passive would be written as above: the second aorist stem plus the endings. The following could be observed from the above forms of the subjunctive:

- A long connecting vowel, either  $\omega$  or  $\eta$  replacing the short vowels  $o/\epsilon$  of the indicative mood.
- The subjunctive tenses have primary endings and there is no augment in the aorist. This is because the time of action is lost outside the indicative mood. It is the kind of action that is paramount.
- The irregular accent of the aorist passive is the result of the contraction of  $\theta \epsilon$ -with the long  $\omega/\eta$  connection vowel.

# **3.4** The Subjunctive Mood of the Greek New Testament

As you have learnt in the undergraduate Greek Grammar, mood has been defined as the affirmation of the relation of action to reality. Moods thus can be divided into two broad classes: the real and the potential. In New Testament Greek, there are four moods: the indicative, the subjunctive, the optative and the imperative. Of all these, it is only the indicative that expresses real action, the other three are used to express potential action. Let us illustrate this though the English language so that you can understand what is meant by the real and the potential action.

Indicative Mood: *The child runs*. This expresses action which is really taking place.

**Subjunctive Mood**: *If the child runs, he will escape*. This expresses an action that is not really taking place but is objectively possible. This is because the child has the ability to run. The subjunctive mood is the nearest to reality of all the potential moods.

**Optative Mood**: *Oh, that the child would run!* This expresses an action that is subjectively possible. It is one step further removed from reality than the subjunctive.

**Imperative Mood**: *Run, child*. This expresses an action that is volitionally possible. This means that the action will result from the exertion of the will of one to produce action on the part of another. It is the furthest removed from the real action of the indicative mood.

The time of action in the subjunctive is relative to that of the main verb. The kind of action finds its expression as linear in the present and punctiliar in the aorist. For example,  $\dot{\epsilon}\dot{\alpha}\nu \lambda\dot{\omega}\omega$  means "if I continue loosing" and  $\dot{\epsilon}\dot{\alpha}\nu \lambda\dot{\omega}\omega$  would mean "if I loose just once". Note the time relation in the following sentences:

In the above sentences, the aorist subjunctive indicates a single act of speaking. In one, it is in the present time, in the second it is in the past time and in the last one it is in the future time.

Greek Sentence	English Translation
ἔρχομαι ἵνα εἴπω αὐτῷ	I come that I may speak to him

ἦλθον ἵνα εἴπω αὐτῷ	I came that I might speak to him
έλεύσομαι ίνα είπω αὐτῷ	I shall come that I may speak to him

### **3.5** Functions of the Subjunctive Mood

## **The Hortatory Function**

The hortatory subjunctive is the use of the first-person plural form of the verb to exhort other people to join in an action that is deemed beneficial to all. For example,  $\ddot{\epsilon}\lambda\theta\omega\mu\epsilon\nu\epsilon_{i\zeta}\tau$  or  $\dot{\epsilon}\lambda\sigma\nu$  would be translated "let us go into the house". No other form of person or number is used for this function. It is used only in the first-person plural exclusively.

# The Prohibitive Function

The prohibitive subjunctive is the use of the second person aorist subjunctive to express a negative entreaty or command. For example,  $\epsilon i \zeta \pi \epsilon i \rho \alpha \sigma \mu \delta \nu \mu \eta$   $\epsilon i \sigma \epsilon \nu \epsilon \gamma \kappa \eta \zeta \eta \mu \delta \zeta$  which would be translated: "Lead us not into temptation. You need to note that the present subjunctive is never used for this form of prohibition; it has to be the aorist subjunctive. You also need to note that the use of the prohibitive subjunctive is used to forbid the commencement of an action (not the cessation of an action already in progress). In this case, the most literal translation of the sentence used as an example above is "don't ever start to lead us into temptation". Note that the prohibition of an action already in progress is done with the use of the present imperative and this would be looked at later under the imperative mood.

# The Deliberative Function

The deliberative subjunctive is used to express a question which is either a mere rhetorical device expecting no answer at all or a real question which expects an answer in the imperative. For example,  $\tau i \epsilon i \pi \omega \dot{\nu} \mu i \nu$ ; which would be translated "What shall I say to you?" This question may not have an answer at all and if it will have one it would either be "say this" or "say that".

#### The Emphatic Negation

The subjunctive is used to express emphatic negation. In doing this, it employs the use of double negatives. As you have been taught earlier, où and  $\mu\eta$  are the two words that are used as negatives. Thus, in this construction, the two would be used together. When this is used, it is a much stronger negation than the simple use of où with the indicative mood. For example, où  $\mu\eta$  ἐκφύγωσιν would be translated "they shall by no means escape".

#### **Subjunctive Purpose**

The subjunctive of purpose which is also called the final subjunctive is the use of the subordinate clause to express purpose. The main particle used in this kind of construction is  $iv\alpha$ . For example,  $ip \chi o \mu iv \alpha i \pi \omega \alpha v \phi$  would be translated "I come in order that I may speak to him".

#### The Probable Future

The probable future condition is expressed by the subjunctive along with  $\dot{\epsilon}\dot{\alpha}v$ . This would be discussed fully under the conditional sentences.

# **3.6 Conditional Sentences**

In the Greek language there are various kinds of conditional statements but only four are outstanding in usage; and these are the ones that would be discussed here. They follow one another according to their degrees of certainty.

- The first-class condition affirms the reality of the condition. This is expressed by the use of  $\varepsilon i$  with the indicative mood in the protasis that is, the if clause) and it will take any other mood or tense in the apodosis (that is, the main clause). For example,  $\varepsilon i \mu \alpha \theta \eta \tau \alpha i \dot{\varepsilon} \sigma \mu \varepsilon \nu \tau \sigma \delta \kappa \nu \rho (\delta \nu \sigma \omega \theta \eta \sigma \delta \mu \varepsilon \theta \alpha would be$ translated "if we are disciples of the Lord, we shall be saved." If you analyze $this sentence carefully, you will discover that in the protasis (<math>\varepsilon i \mu \alpha \theta \eta \tau \alpha i \dot{\varepsilon} \sigma \mu \varepsilon \nu$ ) is in the indicative. This sentence is best translated "since we are the disciples of the Lord, we shall be saved".
- The second-class condition is the contrary to fact condition. In the English language, such contrary to fact statements are expressed in the subjunctive but in the Greek language it is expressed by the secondary tenses of the indicative mood. This construction is expressed by the use of εἰ with the indicative in the protasis and ǎv with the indicative in the apodosis. For example, εἰ ἦς ὧδε οὐκ ǎv ἀπέθανεν ὁ ἀδελφός μου would be translated "if you had been here, my brother would not have died". The fact however is this: "you were not here and hence my brother died".
- The third-class condition is the probable future condition. This condition is expressed by ἐάν with the subjunctive in the protasis and any other form needed in the apodosis. It is used to express that which is not really taking place but will probably take place in the future. For example, τοῦτο ποιήσομεν ἐἀν ἐπιτρέπη ὁ Θεὸς would be translated "this we will do if God permit". It means that though we are not doing it now, it is probable that we will do it on the condition that God permits us.
- The fourth-class condition is the possible future condition. This construction is expressed by the use of εἰ with the optative mood in the protasis and ǎv with the optative mood in the apodosis. For your information, there is no full construction of this kind in the New Testament. In the following example, the words in the parenthesis are supplied so that you would see a complete construction: ἀλλ'εἰ καὶ πάσχοιτε διὰ δικαιοσύνην, μακάροι (ǎv εἴητε) would be translated "but even if you should suffer for righteousness' sake, you would be happy". This statement implies that you are not currently suffering for righteousness' sake but though it is possible, it is not probable that you will. This construction is used to express a condition that is not a reality in the present time but has a remote possibility of becoming a reality.

# 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit, you have studied the subjunctive mood. This mood is one of the moods that are used to express potential action, that is, an action that is not actually taking place but has the possibility of taking place. The subjunctive mood has six different functions. The hortatory subjunctive is used to exhort others to join in an action; the prohibitive subjunctive is used to forbid the beginning of an action; the deliberative subjunctive is used to express a rhetorical question or a question that demands an answer in the affirmative; the emphatic negation; the final subjunctive which is used to express purpose and probable future condition. After this, you have also studied about conditional sentences. You were introduced to four classes of conditional sentences.

# 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points that you have learnt in this unit:

- This subjunctive mood is one of the moods that are used to express potential action, that is, an action that is not actually taking place but has the possibility of taking place.
- The hortatory subjunctive is used to exhort others to join in an action.
- The prohibitive subjunctive is used to forbid the beginning of an action.
- The deliberative subjunctive is used to express a rhetorical question or a question that demands an answer in the affirmative.
- The emphatic negation is used to express a very strong negation. The final subjunctive is used to express purpose and probable future condition. Conditional sentences are sentences that express conditions that are not real.

#### Self-Assessment Exercises

1. ἐὰν εἴπωμεν ὅτι ἁμαρτίαν οὐκ ἔχομεν, ἡ ἀλήθεια οὐκ ἔστιν ἐν ἡμῖν.

2. εἰσήλθομεν εἰς τὴν ἐκκλησίαν ἵνα ἀκούσωμεν τὸν λόγον τοῦ Θεοῦ τὸν κηρθσσόμενον.

3. εἰ αὕτη ἐστὶν ἡ μαρτυρία τοῦ ἰδόντος τὸν Κύριον πιστεύω αὐτήν.

4. ἀκούω τὸν λόγον αὐτοῦ ἵνα γινώσκω τὸ θέλημα αὐτοῦ.

5. εὐαγγελιζώμεθα ἵνα τὰ τέκνα ἀκούση καὶ πιστεύη.

6. ἐὰν εἴπωμεν ὅτι κοινωνίαν ἔχομεν μετ'αὐτοῦ καὶ μένωμεν ἐν ἁμαρτία, ψευδόμεθα.

7. οἱ μὴ πιστεύοντες τὸ εὐαγγέλιον οὐ μὴ σωθῶσιν ἐν τῆ δυνάμει αὐτοῦ.

8. μένωμεν έν ἁμαρτία ίνα ή δύναμις τῆς χάριτος τοῦ Θεοῦ βλέπηται;

9. εἰ ἐκήρυξας τὸ εὐαγγέλιον, οἱ ἄν ἁμαρτωλοὶ ἐπίστευσαν.

10. μὴ εἰσέλθης εἰς τοὺς οἴκους τῶν πονηρῶν.

# 6.0 References/Further Readings

Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers

- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.

Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.

Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# UNIT 4: THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

## Contents

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Vocabulary Study
  - 3.2 The Imperative Mood
  - 3.3 Forms of the Imperative Mood
  - 3.4 Functions of the Imperative Mood
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References/Further Readings

#### 1.0 Introduction

In the previous unit you have studied about the subjunctive mood which is one of the moods that is used to express potential action. You have also read about the functions of subjunctive mood. At the later part of that unit, you also studied the formation of the four kinds of conditional sentences. In this unit, you will also study another of the mood used to express potential action and that is the imperative mood.

#### 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, you should be able to:

- Write the imperative form of any verb that you have learnt before now
- Distinguish between the impetrative mood in Greek and English languages
- Identify the functions of the imperative mood

## 3.0 Main Content

## 3.1 Vocabulary Study

ἀγιάζω	I sanctify	πίνω	I drink
θέλω	I wish	σπείρω	I sow
οὖς, ὠτός, τὸ,	ear	ἄχρι	(with genitive) until
πρίν	before		

# **3.2 The Imperative Mood**

The imperative mood in the New Testament occurs only in the present and aorist tenses. You need to know also that the imperative mood is not available in the first person. Though in the English language the imperative mood occurs only in the second person, in the Greek language, it occurs in the second and third persons. As a result of this, in translation, where the imperative occurs in the third person, it is placed within the permissive idea, using the phrase "let him/her/it..." In the following sub-section, the various forms of the mainline imperative mood would be given.

# **3.3** Forms of the Imperative Mood

#### The present active imperative of $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$ is:

2 <sup>nd</sup> Person	λῦε	Loose	λύετε	loose	
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person	Λυέτω	let him loose	λυέτωσαν	let them loose	

#### The present middle and passive imperative of $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$ is:

2 <sup>nd</sup> Person	λύον	λύεσθε		
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person	λυέσθω	λυέσθωσαν		
The first aorist a	ctive imperative	of λύω is:		
2 <sup>nd</sup> Person	λῦσον	λύσατε		
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person	λυσάτω	λυσάτωσαν		
The first aorist n	niddle imperative	of λύω is:		
2 <sup>nd</sup> Person	λῦσαι	λύσασθε		
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person	λυσάσθω	λυσάσθωσαν		

# The first aorist passive imperative of $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega$ is:

2 <sup>nd</sup> Person	λύθητι	λύθητε		
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person	λυθήτω	λυθήτωσαν		
The second aorist	active imperative of	λείπω is:		
2 <sup>nd</sup> Person	λίπε	λίπετε		
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person	λιπέτω	λιπέτωσαν		
The second aorist passive imperative of $\dot{\alpha}$ ποστέλλω is:				
2 <sup>nd</sup> Person	άποστάληθι	ἀποστάλτε		
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person	ἀποσταλήτω	ἀποσταλήτωσαν		

# The present imperative of εἰμι is:

2 <sup>nd</sup> Person	ĭσθι	ἔστε
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person	ἔστω	ἔστωσαν

# 3.5 Functions of the Imperative Mood

As you have been told earlier, the imperative mood is one of the moods that are used to express potential action. In its own case, the imperative mood is used to express an action which is to be realized by the exercise of the will of one person upon that of another. For example,  $\lambda \tilde{\upsilon} \epsilon \tau \delta \nu \, \check{\alpha} \nu \theta \rho \omega \pi \sigma \nu$  would be translated "loose the man" and  $\lambda \upsilon \dot{\epsilon} \tau \delta \nu \, \check{\alpha} \nu \theta \rho \omega \pi \sigma \nu$  would be translated "loose the man".

You need to know also that the time of action is insignificant in the imperative mood. In this case, the distinction between the present and the aorist tense would lie in the kind of action. The present imperative has to do with an action that is in progress while the aorist would be an action that has not yet come into existence. In this regard, the proper translation of  $\lambda \tilde{\upsilon} \epsilon \tau \delta \nu \, \check{\alpha} \nu \theta \rho \omega \pi \sigma \nu$  would be "continue loosing the man" and  $\lambda \tilde{\upsilon} \sigma \sigma \nu \, \check{\sigma} \nu \, \check{\sigma} \nu \theta \rho \omega \pi \sigma \nu$  would be translated "start loosing the man". The following are the basic functions of the imperative mood:

#### **Cohortative or Positive Function**

The cohortative function is a positive command. To perform this function, the present or the aorist imperative may be used. An example is  $\lambda \tilde{\upsilon} \epsilon \tau \delta \nu \ \tilde{\alpha} \nu \theta \rho \omega \pi \sigma \nu$  which has been translated "continue loosing the man".

# Prohibitive or Negative Function

This is used to give a negative command. To perform this function, only the present imperative is used along with the negative particle  $\mu\eta$ . This construction is used purposely to prohibit the continuance of an action that is already in progress. For example,  $\mu\dot{\eta} \lambda \tilde{\upsilon} \epsilon \alpha \dot{\upsilon} \tau \acute{\upsilon} \nu$  which would be translated "stop loosing him" and  $\mu\dot{\eta} \lambda \acute{\epsilon} \gamma \epsilon \tau \epsilon \tau \alpha \tilde{\upsilon} \tau \alpha$  which would also be translated "stop saying these things". This is the opposite form of the aorist subjunctive that is used to prohibit the commencement of an action. This distinction is of tremendous syntactical significance.

# **Entreaty Function**

This is the use of the imperative to express a request rather than a direct command. A good example is found in the prayer of Jesus of John 17:11, when he said:  $\pi \dot{\alpha} \tau \epsilon \rho \ \ddot{\alpha} \gamma \iota \epsilon$ ,  $\tau \dot{\eta} \rho \eta \sigma \circ \nu \alpha \dot{\upsilon} \tau \circ \dot{\upsilon} \epsilon \dot{\upsilon} \tau \tilde{\phi} \ \dot{\sigma} \upsilon \dot{\upsilon} \dot{\omega} \tau \iota \sigma \sigma \upsilon$  which have been translated "Holy Father, keep them in thy name."

#### **Permissive Function**

This is the use of the third person imperative that is not available in the English construction. However, to interpret it, the English auxiliary verb 'let' would be introduced to make its meaning clear. For example,  $\lambda \upsilon \acute{\epsilon} \tau \eth \upsilon \breve{\delta} \upsilon \rat{0} \mu \eth \uabla$  would be translated "let him continue loosing the man" and  $\lambda \upsilon \sigma \acute{\epsilon} \tau \eth \upsilon \breve{\delta} \upsilon \rat{0} \mu \circlearrowright \uabla$  which would also be translated "let him loose (or start loosing) the man".

#### 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit, you have studied the imperative mood. You have learnt that there is no first person in the imperative mood and that unlike the English language, which has the imperative only in the second person; the Greek language has the imperative in both the second and third persons. The imperative has four different functions: it can be used as positive command, as negative (prohibitive) command, as an entreaty and also for the permissive use. You have also been taught that in the imperative mood, the time of action is of no significance but the distinction between the present and the aorist is to be found in the kind of action.

#### 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points that you have learnt in this unit:

- The imperative mood appears only in the present and aorist tenses.
- Unlike the English language, which has the imperative only in the second person; the Greek language has the imperative in both the second and third persons.
- Cohortative command is used to give positive command
- Prohibitive command is used to give negative command and it prohibits the commencement of an action.

- The entreaty is a function that is used to express a request rather than a direct command.
- There is the permissive function that is used in the third person. In translation, the English 'let' is supplied to make the tense clear.

# Self-Assessment Exercise

# Translate the following sentences to English:

- 1. ἁγίαζε τὸ ιἑρὸν τοῦ Θεοῦ.
- 2. ἀκούσατε τὸν λόγον τοῦ Κυριόυ καὶ σώθητε.
- 3. μὴ λέγε πονηρὰ τοῖς τέκνοις καὶ εἶπε ἀγαθὰ αὐτοῖς.
- 4. ἀκουέσθωσαν αἱ παραβολαὶ περὶ τῆς βασιλείας ἐν τῷ ἐκκλησία.
- 5. Κύριε, κατάβηθι πρίν ἀποθασεῖν τὸ παιδίον μου.
- 6. εί ὁ ἄνθρωπος πιστεύει εἰς τὸν Κύριον, βαπτισθήτω.
- 7. πίνετε τὸ ὕδωρ τῆς ζωῆς καὶ ἐσθίετε τὸν ἄρτον τῆς ζωῆς.
- 8. γίνου πιστὸς ἄχρι θανάτου.
- 9. ὁ ἔχων ὦτα ἀκοθσάτω.
- 10. μη εἰσέλθης εἰς την πόλιν την οὖσαν ἐν τῷ ὄρει.

#### 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.

Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.

Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# UNIT 5: CONTRACT VERBS

#### Contents

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Vocabulary Study
  - 3.2 The Contract Verbs
  - 3.3 The Chart for Regular Contractions
  - 3.4 Principles for Contractions
  - 3.5 Accenting in Contract Verbs
  - 3.6 Forms of Contract Verbs
  - 3.7 Forms of Liquid Contract Verbs
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References/Further Readings

#### 1.0 Introduction

In the last two units, you have studied about two moods that are different from the indicative that you have learnt mostly in undergraduate Greek and from the beginning of this of this course. In this unit, you will take a break and focus on another form of verbs that is called the contract verbs. Contract verbs are a special class of verbs as you would find out later in this unit and thus have a different ending from others. You need to take note of this class so that when you see them you would not mistake them for another word thus have difficulty in translating or interpreting them.

#### 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, you should be able to:

• Identify contract verbs

- Explain the principles behind the contractions
- Identify the vowels that produced a certain spelling
- Parse any contract verb

# 3.0 Main Content

# 3.1 Vocabulary Study

Greek Word	Translation	Greek Word	Translation	
ἀγαπάω	I love (to put	παρακαλέω	I exhort, I comfort	
	supreme value on)			
Δηλόω	I show	περιπατέω	I walk about	
εὐλογέω	I bless	Ποιέω	I do, I make	
εὐχαριστέω	I give thanks	σταυρόω	I crucify	
Ζητέω	I seek	Τηρέω	I keep	
Θεωρέω	I behold	Τιμάω	I honour	
Καλέω	I call	Λαλέω	I speak	
Φιλέω	I love (to have a warm personal affection for)			

# **3.2 The Contract Verbs**

Contrast verbs are a special class of  $\omega$  verbs. These the verbs ending in  $-\alpha\omega$ ,  $-\omega\omega$  and  $-\omega\omega$ . In the process of forming the paradigm however, the verbs  $\alpha$ ,  $\sigma$ , and  $\varepsilon$  would have to come in contact with the connecting vowel (usually  $\sigma$  and  $\varepsilon$ ) thus bringing together two vowels or a vowel and a diphthong to form a single long vowel or diphthong. This contraction would take place in all forms of the present and imperfect tenses. This does not however take place in the aorist, future, pluperfect and future perfect passive tenses because of the tense sign consonants. These tenses are regular except for the lengthening of the stem vowel ( $\alpha$ ,  $\sigma$ , and  $\varepsilon$ ) before  $\sigma$ ,  $\kappa$  and other sibilants. The only exception to this rule is  $\kappa\alpha\lambda\omega$  whose future form is  $\kappa\alpha\lambda\omega$  and not  $\kappa\alpha\lambda\eta\sigma\omega$ .

# **3.3 The Chart for Regular Contractions**

The chart below shows the regular contractions of the stem vowels (this is the vertical column) with the connecting vowel which is on the top line.

	Е	η	<b>E</b> 1	η	0	ω	ου	01
3	Eι	η	<b>E</b> 1	η	ου	ω	ου	01
α	А	α	á	á	Ω	ω	ω	ώ
0	Ου	ω	01	01	ου	ω	ου	01

# **3.4 Principles for Contractions**

As you study the following principles, ensure that you read along with the chart above so that you would understand the reasons for the contractions:

# **Vowel Contracting with Vowel**

The first thing to learn here is that when two like vowels come together to form a contraction, they would result in the long vowel of their class. For example,  $\alpha + \alpha = \alpha$  (long alpha) and  $\varepsilon + \eta = \eta$ . There are only two exceptions to this rule, and these are:  $\varepsilon + \varepsilon = \varepsilon \iota$  and  $o + o = o\upsilon$ .

Secondly, when an o sound vowel (o or  $\omega$ ) comes in contact with the connecting vowels ( $\alpha$ ,  $\varepsilon$ , and  $\eta$ ), no matter the position (whether in first or second position) it forms an  $\omega$ . The exceptions to this rule are  $\varepsilon + o = ov$  and  $o + \varepsilon = ov$ . Thirdly, when  $\alpha$ -and  $\varepsilon$ - (or  $-\eta$ ) contracts, the one which comes first overcomes the other and forms its long. For example,  $\alpha + \varepsilon = \alpha$  and  $\alpha + \eta = \alpha$  and  $\varepsilon + \alpha = \eta$ .

### **Vowel Contracting with Diphthong**

Firstly, when a vowel comes in contact with a diphthong which begins with the same vowel, that vowel will disappear. For example,  $\varepsilon + \varepsilon \iota = \varepsilon \iota$  and  $\upsilon + \upsilon \upsilon = \upsilon \upsilon$ . Secondly, when a vowel comes in contact with a diphthong which does not begin with a similar vowel, it contracts with the diphthongs first vowel and the diphthong's second vowel disappears, unless it is an  $\iota$ , which in its case will become a subscript. For example,  $\alpha + \varepsilon \iota = \alpha$ ;  $\alpha + \upsilon \upsilon = \omega$  and  $\varepsilon + \upsilon \upsilon = \upsilon \upsilon$ . The major exceptions to this rule are  $\upsilon + \varepsilon \iota = \upsilon$ ;  $\upsilon + \eta = \upsilon \iota$  and  $\varepsilon + \upsilon \iota = \upsilon \iota$ . There are however two unusual exceptions to this rule. The present active infinitive of verbs ending in  $-\alpha\omega$  has  $\tilde{\alpha}v$  as its regular ending. The other is the present active infinitive of verbs ending in  $-\omega\omega$  which will have  $-\tilde{\upsilon}v$  (and not -  $\upsilon \upsilon$ ) as its regular ending.

## 3.5 Accenting in Contract Verbs

There are four things to note about accenting when it comes to the case of contract verbs:

- 1. The accent on the uncontracted form will be recessive just as it will be in any other verb.
- If the accent is to fall on one of the vowels suffering contraction, the accent will fall on the vowel that the contraction results in. For example, τιμάω will become τιμῶ but ἐτίμαον will be ἐτίμων.
- 3. If the accent falls on the first of the two vowels, the resulting contracting form will have a circumflex as its accent. A good example is  $\tau \iota \mu \tilde{\omega}$  as seen in the example 'b' above.
- If the accent falls on the second of the two vowels, the resulting contracting form will have an acute accent. A good example is τιμαόμεθα which in its contracted form will become τιμόμεθα.

## **3.6** Forms of Contract Verbs

In showing the forms of the contracted verbs, you will have both the contracted and the uncontracted forms so that you will understand how the contracted form was got. Please, note that you will never see the uncontracted from in the Greek New Testament. They are just used here for the purpose of clarity and for your understanding.

Uncontracted	<b>Contracted Form</b>	Uncontracted	<b>Contracted Form</b>
Form		Form	
Τιμάω	τιμῶ	τιμάομεν	τιμῶμεν
Τιμάεις	τιμᾶς	τιμάετε	τιμᾶτε
Τιμάει	τιμᾶ	τιμάουσι	τιμῶσι

## Present Active Indicative of τιμάω

## Present Active Indicative of φιλέω

Uncontracted	<b>Contracted Form</b>	Uncontracted	<b>Contracted Form</b>
Form		Form	
Φιλέω	φιλῶ	φιλέομεν	φιλοῦμεν
Φιλέεις	φιλεῖς	φιλέετε	φιλεῖτε
Φιλέει	φιλεῖ	φιλέουσι	φιλοῦσι

## **Present Active Indicative of δηλόω**

Uncontracted	<b>Contracted Form</b>	Uncontracted	Contracted Form
Form		Form	
Δηλόω	δηλῶ	δηλόομεν	δηλοῦμεν
Δηλόεις	δηλοῖς	δηλόετε	δηλοῦτε
Δηλόει	δηλοĩ	δηλόουσι	δηλοῦσι

# 3.7 Forms of Liquid Future Active Contract Verbs

Liquid verbs are the verbs that their stems ended in any of the following letters:  $\lambda$ ,  $\mu$ ,  $\nu$  and  $\rho$ . In forming their future active indicative verbs, they will drop the  $\sigma$  of the future and add an  $\epsilon$ , and then form the regular contraction. Thus, the future active indicative of  $\kappa\rho i \omega$  is as follows:

Uncontracted	<b>Contracted Form</b>	Uncontracted	<b>Contracted Form</b>
Form		Form	
Κρίνσω	κρινῶ	κρινσῶομεν	κρινοῦμεν
Κρίνσεις	κρινεῖς	κρινσῶετε	κρινοῦτε
Κρίνσει	κρινεῖ	κρινσῶουσι	κρινοῦσι

## 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit you have learnt about the contract verbs. The contract verbs are the verbs whose stems ended in vowels and because they have to be joined with the endings of the various paradigms, the vowels that come into contact with one another would have to undergo contraction. You have been given the chart that would serve as a guide to the contractions and you have also been given the rules that would govern the accenting of contract verbs. You need to practice these forms with other contract verbs so that you will master them.

## 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points that you have learnt in this unit:

- Contrast verbs are a special class of ω verbs.
- These are the verbs ending in  $-\alpha\omega$ ,  $-\omega\omega$  and  $-\varepsilon\omega$ .
- In the process of forming the paradigm however, the verbs  $\alpha$ , o, and  $\varepsilon$  would have to come in contact with the connecting vowel (usually o and  $\varepsilon$ ) thus bringing together two vowels or a vowel and a diphthong to form a single long vowel or diphthong.

## Self-Assessment Exercise

1. εἰ ἀγαπῶμεν τὸν Κύριον, τηρῶμεν τὰς ἐντολὰς αὐτοῦ καὶ ποιῶμεν τὰ λαλούμενα ἡμῖν ὑπ'αὐτοῦ.

2. ἐζήτουν αὐτὸν οἱ πονηροὶ, ἵνα θεωρῶσι τὰ ποιούμενα ὑπ'αὐτοῦ.

- 3. ὁ μαθητὴς ἐλάλησεν ταῦτα τοῖς περιπατοῦσιν ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ.
- 4. οὐκ εὐλογήσει ὁ Θεὸς τὸν μὴ περιπατοῦντα κατὰ τὰς ἐντολὰς τοῦ υἱου αὐτοῦ.

5. ταῦτα ἐποιεῖτε ἡμῖν ὅτι φιλεῖτε τὸν καλέσαντα ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν αὐτοῦ.

- 6. έθεώρουν τὸν Ἰησοῦν σταυροῦμενον ὑπὸ τῶν στρατιωτῶν.
- 7. εὐχαριστῶμεν τῷ Θεῷ καὶ τιμῶμεν τὸ ὄνομα αὐτοῦ.

8. ὁ Θεὸς ἠγάπησεν τὸν κόσμον καὶ παρακαλεῖ ἀνθρώους ἀγαπᾶν τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῶ.

9. ὁ Ἰησοῦς λέγει τῷ μαθητῃ, Σίμον, φιλεῖς με;

10. ἐαν ἐν τῷ φωτὶ περιπατῶμεν ὡς αὐτός ἐστιν ἐν τῷ φωτὶ, τὸ αἶμα Ἰησοῦ τοῦ υἰοῦ αὐτοῦ καθαρίζει ἡμᾶς ἀπὸ τῆς ἁμαρτίας ἠμῶν.

11. ἐὰν εἴπωμεν ὅτι οὐχ ἡμαρτήκαμεν, ψεύστην ποιοῦμεν αὐτὸν καὶ ὁ λόγος αὐτοῦ οὐκ ἔστιν ἐν ἡμῖν.

# 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.

Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.

Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# UNIT 6: PRONOUNS

# Contents

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Objectives
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Vocabulary Study
  - 3.2 The Relative Pronoun
  - 3.3 The Interrogative Pronoun
  - 3.4 The Indefinite Pronoun
  - 3.5 The Indefinite Relative Pronoun
  - 3.6 The Reciprocal Pronoun
  - 3.7 The Reflexive Pronouns
  - 3.8 The Possessive Pronouns
  - 3.9 The Negative Pronouns
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References/Further Readings

## **1.0** Introduction

In the last unit, you have studied a special class of verbs known as the contract verbs and also called the  $-\varepsilon \omega$  verbs. You have been shown how contraction of vowels would result either in another vowel or in a diphthong and the principles that guides such contraction. In this unit however, we are going to study about pronouns again. You will remember that in module two unit four you have studied about the personal pronouns and in unit five of the same module you have studied the demonstrative pronouns respectively. I will advise you to reach for the course material on CRS215 and revise these units on personal and demonstrative pronouns. In this unit however, you will be focusing on the other types of pronouns.

# 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, you should be able to:

- Identify relative pronouns
- Decline interrogative pronouns
- Explain the use of the indefinite pronoun
- Discuss the use of reciprocal pronouns

• Explain why possessive pronouns are also called possessive adjectives

# 3.0 MAIN CONTENT

## 3.1 Vocabulary Study

ἐγω	Ι
ἐμοῦ or μου	of me
ἐμοί or μοι	to me
ἐμε or με	me
ήμεῖς	we
ήμῶν	of us
ήμῖν	to us
ήμᾶς	-us

Note: to have a complete vocabulary study you should also study the second person and the third person personal pronouns forms also with the demonstrative pronouns also.

# 3.2 The Relative Pronoun

The relative pronoun is that pronoun that is used to relate one substantive to another. Because it has to agree with its substantive in gender and number, it exists in the three gender forms and also in the singular and the plural. The following is the declension of the relative pronoun:

	Singular			Plural		
Case	Masculine Feminine Neuter			Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	őς	ή	ő	οἵ	αἵ	ά
Gen/Abl	où	ἦς	ov	ῶν	ῶν	ῶν
Dat/Loc/Ins	õ	ή	õ	οἶς	αἶς	οἶς
Accusative	őν	ἦv	ő	လိုင	ἅς	ά

It is however important for you to know that the case of the pronoun is determined by its function in the relative clause. Let us examine the following examples:

a. ὁ ἄνθρωπος ὅς εἶδε τὸν Κύριον ἑστιν νὑν ἀπόστολος.

b. ὁ ἄνθρωπος ὄν εἶδες ἐξῆλθεν ἐκ τῆς πόλεως.

In sentence a, which would be translated "the man who saw the Lord is now an apostle," the relative pronoun is  $\delta \varsigma$  and it is in the nominative case because it functions along with its antecedent. In sentence b, which would be translated "the man whom you saw came out of the city," the relative pronoun is  $\delta v$  and it is in the accusative case because if its function while its substantive is in the nominative case.

You also need to know that sometimes a relative pronoun is so closely related to its antecedent that it is attracted to the case of its antecedent, that is, it takes the case form of its antecedent even though it retains its own case function. An example is  $\delta \, \alpha \nu \pi i \eta \, \delta \kappa \, \tau o \tilde{\nu} \, \delta \delta \sigma \omega \, \alpha \delta \tau \tilde{\omega}$  which would be translated "whoever drinks of the water which I shall give him". In this sentence, the relative pronoun ov is

grammatically the direct object of  $\delta \omega \sigma \omega$  and thus it would be expected to be in the accusative case. however, because it has been attracted to the case form of its antecedent, it took its case in the genitive. You also need to note that the above example is also representative of the use of relative pronoun as a conditional sentence. The relative pronouns  $\delta v$  or  $\delta \omega v$  are used with the subjunctive mood to express clauses which in English would be expressed by whoever, whatever, whenever and wherever. It usually gives the third-class conditional sentence.

Finally, there are times when the antecedent of a relative pronoun is not given and thus the relative pronoun is used substantively. An example is  $\delta \zeta \ o \dot{\upsilon} \kappa \ \check{\epsilon} \sigma \tau \upsilon \kappa \alpha \theta' \ \dot{\upsilon} \mu \tilde{\omega} \upsilon \ \dot{\upsilon} \pi \grave{\epsilon} \rho \ \dot{\upsilon} \mu \tilde{\omega} \upsilon \ \dot{\epsilon} \sigma \tau \upsilon \kappa \alpha \theta' \ \dot{\upsilon} \mu \tilde{\omega} \upsilon$  Note that  $\delta \zeta$  is translated 'he' because it is the masculine singular nominative of the relative pronoun. If  $\eta$  had been used, it would have been translated 'she'.

# **3.3 The Interrogative Pronoun**

The interrogative pronouns are the pronouns that are used to introduce direct or indirect questions. These pronouns are also given according to gender, case and number.

	Singular			Plural		
Case	Masculine Feminine Neuter		Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	
Nom.	τίς	τίς	τίς	τίνες	τίνες	τίνα
Gen./Abl	τίνος	τίνος	τίνος	τίνων	τίνων	τίνων
Dat/Loc/Ins	τίνι	τίνι	τίνι	τίσι(ν)	τίσι(ν)	τίσι(ν)
Accusative	τίνα	τίνα	τί	τίνας	τίνας	τίνα

You should note in the above table that the interrogative pronoun form for both the masculine and feminine are identical. In this case, it means the context would decide which of the genders to use. The following are examples of such questions:  $\tau i \zeta \epsilon i$ ; which would be translated "who are you?" and  $\tau i \lambda \epsilon \gamma \epsilon i$ ; which would also be translated "what is he saying?"

# **3.4 The Indefinite Pronoun**

The indefinite pronouns are pronouns that do not refer to a specific person or thing. In their form, they are identical with the interrogative pronouns except that they are enclitics. As enclitics, they would not be accented except the special rules for accenting enclitics apply. In order to avoid misunderstanding, the forms would be repeated below so that you can see the difference between the interrogative and the indefinite pronouns.

	Singular			Plural		
Case	Masculine Feminine Neuter		euter Masculine Femini		Neuter	
Nom.	τις	τις	τις	τινες	τινες	τινα
Gen./Abl	τινος	τινος	τινος	τινων	τινων	τινων
Dat/Loc/Ins	τινι	τινι	τινι	τισι(ν)	τισι(ν)	τισι(ν)
Accusative	τινα	τινα	τι	τινας	τινας	τινα

These pronouns are usually translated as: someone, somebody, something, a certain one or a certain thing. Examples are:  $\dot{\epsilon} \dot{\alpha} \nu \mu \eta \tau \iota \varsigma \gamma \epsilon \nu \nu \eta \theta \tilde{\eta} \, \check{\alpha} \nu \omega \theta \epsilon \nu$  which would be translated "except somebody is born from above" and  $\epsilon \dot{\iota} \varsigma \tau \dot{\eta} \nu \, \dot{\epsilon} \kappa \kappa \lambda \eta \sigma (\alpha \nu \, \epsilon i \sigma \tilde{\eta} \lambda \theta \epsilon$  "a certain man came into the church".

# **3.5 The Indefinite Relative Pronoun**

The indefinite relative pronoun is so called because it is a combination of the relative pronoun  $\delta \varsigma$  and the indefinite pronoun  $\tau \iota \varsigma$ . In the New Testament it appears only in the nominative case but appeared both in the singular and the plural. The following are its forms:

Gender	Singular	Plural
Masculine	ὄστις	οἵτινες
Feminine	ήτις	αἵτινες
Neuter	<i></i> ότι	αἵτινα

By function, it is qualitative in nature and it is usually translated as 'who' though its meaning is far more than that. The expression "who is of such nature" is a better translation of the idea. A good example of this usage in the New Testament can be seen in Roman 1:25 which reads: oἵτινες μετήλλαξαν τὴν ἀλήθειαν τοῦ Θεοῦ ἐν τῷ ψεύδει which is translated "who were of such nature that they exchanged the truth of God for a lie". You are hereby advised that when translating this word, look for the qualitative idea.

# **3.6** The Reciprocal Pronoun

The reciprocal pronoun is that pronoun that shows mutual relationship. It is a word or phrase representing two or more things that mutually correspond to one another. By function, it represents an interchange of action between the members of a plural subject. The reciprocal pronoun appeared in the New Testament only in three case forms and these are:  $\dot{\alpha}\lambda\lambda\eta\lambda\omega\nu$ ,  $\dot{\alpha}\lambda\lambda\eta\lambda\omega\varsigma$  and  $\dot{\alpha}\lambda\lambda\eta\lambda\omega\varsigma$ . Examples from the New Testament are:  $\dot{\alpha}\gamma\alpha\pi\omega\mu\nu$   $\dot{\alpha}\lambda\lambda\eta\lambda\omega\varsigma$  which means "let us love one another" and  $\dot{\epsilon}\xi\epsilon\kappa\alpha\delta\theta\eta\sigma\alpha\nu$   $\dot{\epsilon}\nu$  t $\eta$   $\dot{\epsilon}\rho\epsilon\xi\epsilon\iota$   $\alpha\dot{\nu}t\omega\nu$   $\epsilon\dot{\epsilon}\zeta$   $\dot{\alpha}\lambda\lambda\eta\lambda\omega\varsigma$  which also would be translated "they burned in their lust for one another".

# **3.7** The Reflexive Pronouns

The reflexive pronoun is that noun that describes an action taken by the subject in such a way that the action affects the subject. The function is to express the action of the subject upon itself. The forms are as follows:

### **First Person - Myself**

	Sing	gular	Plural		
Case	Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine	
Gen./Abl.	έμαυτοῦ	ἐμαυτῆς	ἑαυτῶν	έαυτῶν	
Dat/Loc/Ins	ἐμαυτῷ	ἐμαυτῆ	έαυτοῖς	έαυταῖς	
Accusative	<b>ἐμαυτόν</b>	ἐμαυτήν	ἐαυτούς	ἑαυτάς	

#### **Second Person – Yourself**

	Sing	gular	Plural		
Case	Masculine Feminine		Masculine	Feminine	
Gen./Abl.	σεαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς	έαυτῶν	έαυτῶν	
Dat/Loc/Ins	σεαυτῷ	σεαυτῷ σεαυτῆ		έαυταῖς	
Accusative	σεαυτόν	σεαυτήν	ἐαυτούς	ἑαυτάς	

## Third Person-Himself, Herself, Itself

	Singular			Plural		
Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Gen./Abl.	έαυτοῦ	ἐαυτῆς	έαυτοῦ	έαυτῶν	έαυτῶν	έαυτῶν
Dat/Loc/Ins	έαυτῷ	ἐαυτῆ	έαυτῷ	έαυτοῖς	έαυταῖς	έαυτοῖς
Accusative	ἑαυτόν	ἐαυτήν	ἑαυτό	ἐαυτούς	έαυτάς	ἐαυτά

If you are a keen observer, the first thing you will notice is the absence of the nominative case in the forms above. This is because the reflexive idea can only be expressed in the oblique cases. The intensive myself, yourself and himself in the nominative has been taken care of by the use of the intensive  $\alpha \dot{\upsilon} t \dot{\sigma} \zeta$  that you have learnt in undergraduate days. You can please go and revise that to refresh your memory. The second thing you would notice is that the plural forms are identical for the first, second and third persons. This is also because the old first and second persons have been dropped by the Greeks. An example of the use of the reflexive pronoun is:  $\dot{\upsilon} \gamma \dot{\alpha} \rho \, \dot{\epsilon} \alpha \upsilon \tau \dot{\upsilon} \zeta \, \kappa \eta \rho \dot{\upsilon} \sigma \sigma \mu \varkappa \upsilon \dot{\upsilon} \dot{\upsilon}$  which would be translated "for we preach not ourselves" and  $\lambda \dot{\epsilon} \gamma \omega \tau \alpha \overline{\upsilon} \tau \alpha \pi \epsilon \rho \dot{\iota} \dot{\epsilon} \mu \alpha \upsilon \tau \tilde{\upsilon} \vec{\upsilon}$  which would also be translated "I say these things concerning myself."

## **3.8** The Possessive Pronouns

These pronouns are called possessive pronouns because they are used to designate ownership. They are also classified as possessive adjectives because they also agree in gender, number and case with the noun they modify. The following are the forms of the possessive pronoun:

#### **First Person-my**

	Singular			Plural		
Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nominative	ἐμός	Μη	ἐμόν	ẻμοί	ἐμαί	ἐμά
Gen./Abl.	έμοῦ	ἐμῆς	έμοῦ	ἐμῶν	ἐμῶν	ἐμῶν
Dat/Loc/Ins	ẻμῷ	ἐμῃ̃	ἐμῷ	ἐμοῖς	ἐμαῖς	ἐμοῖς
Accusative	ἐμον	ἐμήν	ἐμόν	ἐμούς	ἐμάς	ἐμά

#### Second Person – Yourself

	Sing	gular	Plural		
Case	Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine	
Gen./Abl.	σεαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς	έαυτῶν	έαυτῶν	
Dat/Loc/Ins	σεαυτῷ	σεαυτῆ	έαυτοῖς	έαυταῖς	
Accusative	σεαυτόν	σεαυτήν	έαυτούς	ἑαυτάς	

#### Third Person-Himself, Herself, Itself

	Singular			Plural		
Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Gen./Abl.	έαυτοῦ	ἐαυτῆς	έαυτοῦ	έαυτῶν	ἑαυτῶν	έαυτῶν
Dat/Loc/Ins	έαυτῷ	ἐαυτῆ	έαυτῷ	έαυτοῖς	έαυταῖς	έαυτοῖς
Accusative	ἑαυτόν	ἐαυτήν	ἑαυτό	ἐαυτούς	ἑαυτάς	έαυτά

The following are examples of the usage of possessive pronouns:

Sing	gular	Plural		
ό ἐμὸς οἶκος	my house	οἱ ἐμοὶ οἶκοι	my houses	
ό σὸς οἶκος	your house	οί σοὶ οἶκοι	your houses	
ό ἴδιος οἶκος	his house	οἱ ἴδιοι οἶκοι	his houses	
ό ήμέτερος οἶκος	our house	οἱ ἡμέτεροι οἶκοι	our houses	
ό ύμέτερος οἶκος	your house	ό ὑμέτερος οἶκοι	your houses	

#### **3.9 The Negative Pronouns**

There are two types of negative pronouns:  $o\dot{v}\delta\epsilon\dot{\zeta}$  (which is usually used with the indicative mood) and  $\mu\eta\delta\epsilon\dot{\zeta}$  which is used with any other mood. The negative pronoun is formed through the combination of the numeral one ( $\epsilon\dot{i}\zeta$ ,  $\mu\dot{\alpha}$  and  $\check{\epsilon}\zeta$ ) and the negative particles hence it is really literally translated "no one". The negative pronouns are declined thus:

Case	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter
Nom.	οὐδείς	οὐδεμία	οὐδέν	μηδείς	μηδεμία	μηδέν
Gen/Abl	οὐδενός	οὐδεμιᾶς	οὐδενός	μηδενός	μηδεμιᾶς	μηδενός
D/L/I	οὐδενί	οὐδεμια	οὐδενί	μηδενί	μηδεμια	μηδενί
Acc.	οὐδένα	οὐδεμίαν	οὐδέν	μηδένα	μηδεμίαν	μηδέν

Examples of the use of the negative pronouns are: où $\delta\epsilon$ í $\zeta$  ἕρ $\chi\epsilon\tau\alpha$ i προς τον πατέρα εἰ μὴ δι'ἐμοῦ which means "no one comes to the father if not through me" and μηδεὶ $\zeta$  πλανάτω ὑμᾶ $\zeta$  which means "let no one deceive you."

# 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit you have studied the other types of pronouns apart from the personal and demonstrative pronouns that have been studied before. You have been taught the forms of the relative pronoun, the interrogative pronoun, the indefinite pronoun, the indefinite-relative pronoun, the reciprocal pronoun, the reciprocal pronoun, the reflexive pronoun, the possessive pronoun and the negative pronouns.

# 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points that you have learnt in this unit:

- The relative pronoun is used to relate one substantive to another, and it has to agree with its antecedent in gender and number while its case is determined by its function.
- The interrogative pronouns are used to introduce direct or indirect questions.
- The indefinite pronouns are similar to interrogative pronouns except that they are enclitics.
- The indefinite relative pronoun combines the form of the relative and the indefinite pronoun and it is more qualitative in function.
- The reciprocal pronoun is used to represent an interchange of actions between members of a plural group.
- The reflexive pronoun expresses the action of the subject upon itself.
- The possessive pronouns are also called possessive adjectives because they must agree with the noun in gender, case and number.

# Self-Assessment Exercise

1 John 1:5 <br/> <br/> δς δ' ἂν τηρῆ αὐτοῦ τὸν λόγον, ἀληθῶς ἐν τούτῷ ἡ ἀγάπη τοῦ θεοῦ τετελείωται. ἐν τούτῷ γινώσκομεν ὅτι ἐν αὐτῷ ἐσμεν·

1 John 1:6 <br/> ὁ λέγων ἐν αὐτῷ μένειν ὀφείλει καθὼς ἐκεῖνος περιεπάτησεν κα<br/>ὶ $\Box$ αὐτὸς περιπατεῖν.

1 John 1:7 □Άγαπητοί, οὐκ ἐντολὴν καινὴν γράφω ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἐντολὴν παλαιὰν ἣν εἴχετε ἀπ' ἀρχῆς· ἡ ἐντολὴ ἡ παλαιά ἐστιν ὁ λόγος ὃν □ἠκούσατε.

1 John 1:8 πάλιν ἐντολὴν καινὴν γράφω ὑμῖν, ὅ ἐστιν ἀληθὲς ἐν αὐτῷ καὶ ἐν ὑμῖν, ὅτι ἡ σκοτία παράγεται καὶ τὸ φῶς τὸ ἀληθινὸν ἤδη φαίνει.

1 John 1:9 ὁ λέγων ἐν τῷ φωτὶ εἶναι καὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν αὐτοῦ μισῶν ἐν τῇ σκοτία ἐστὶν ἕως ἄρτι.

1 John 1:10 ὁ ἀγαπῶν τὸν ἀδελφὸν αὐτοῦ ἐν τῷ φωτὶ μένει, καὶ σκάνδαλον ἐν αὐτῷ οὐκ ἔστιν·

Please note that in doing your translation, avoid polished English to show the various nuances.

# 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.

Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.

Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# MODULE 3

- Unit 1: Adjectives
- Unit 2: Verbs of the -mi Conjugation
- Unit 3: The Article
- Unit 4: The Infinitive

# UNIT 1: ADJECTIVES

## Contents

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Vocabulary Study
  - 3.2 The Study of Adjectives
  - 3.3 The Functions of Adjectives
  - 3.4 Forms of Adjectives
  - 3.5 Comparison of Adjectives
  - 3.6 Adverbs
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References/Further Readings

# 1.0 Introduction

In the last module you have continued your study of Further Greek by going through the study of moods other than the indicative mood, namely, the subjunctive and the imperative mood. You have also studied the contract verbs and the pronouns other than the personal and the demonstrative pronouns. In this module you would be expected to study the few syntactical matters before going on to the practical aspect of this course. In this unit you would continue your study of the adjectives. You would remember that in undergraduate Greek you have studied the adjectives of the first and second declension. This unit is a continuation of that unit. I will advise that you go back to that course material and revise what you have studied on the adjectives of the first and second declension.

## 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, you should be able to:

- Decline any adjective
- Differentiate between predicative and attributive usage of the adjective
- Draw the comparison of adjectives in Greek
- Discuss the formation of adverbs.

# 3.0 Main Content

3.1 Vocabulary Study

ἀληθής, ἀληθές	true
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα	great
πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν	every
πολύς, πολλή, πολύ	much, many

## 3.2 The Study of Adjectives

Adjectives are words describing nouns, that is, words that describe or qualify a noun or pronoun. In the earlier study of adjectives, you have studied adjectives that follow a regular pattern. In this unit, you would study the declension of an adjective in the first declension, but which is feminine  $(\pi \tilde{\alpha}_{\zeta})$  and some others in the third declension.

# **3.3** The Functions of Adjectives

Adjectives in Greek are used in three ways: attributively, predicatively and substantively.

# **The Predicative Construction**

In the predicative use, the adjective makes an assertion about the noun. The example here is:  $\pi \tilde{\alpha} \sigma \alpha \dot{\eta} \pi \delta \lambda \iota \varsigma$  which would be translated "all the city". Note that in this construction, it is the substantive noun that carries the definite article.

## Attributive Use of Adjectives

When adjectives are used attributively, they attribute qualities to the noun modified. An example is  $\dot{\eta} \pi \tilde{\alpha} \sigma \alpha \pi \delta \lambda \varsigma$  which would be translated "the whole city". Note that in this construction, the adjective carries the definite article.

## The Substantive Construction

This usage occurs when the adjective is made to function as the noun. In such usages, the adjective would be placed in the nominative case without any other noun. For example,  $\pi \tilde{\alpha} \sigma \alpha \pi \delta \lambda \varsigma$  would mean "every city".

In the Greek language, there are times when the adjective is placed in a predicate position along with a participle. An example is,  $\pi \tilde{\alpha} \zeta$  o  $\pi \iota \sigma \tau \epsilon \upsilon \omega \omega$  which would be translated "everyone who believes".

## **3.4** Forms of Adjectives

Below is the declension of  $\pi \tilde{\alpha} \varsigma$ . This declension however follows the third declension masculine and neuter and first declension in the feminine:

	Singular			Plural		
Case	Mas	Fem	Neuter	Mas	Fem	Neuter
Nom.	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα
Gen./Abl.	παντός	πάσης	παντός	πάντων	πάντων	πάντων

Da/Lo/Ins	παντί	πἀση	παντί	πᾶσι(ν)	πάσαις	πᾶσι(ν)
Acc	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν	πάντας	πάσας	πάντα

Below is the declension of  $\mu \epsilon \gamma \alpha \zeta$  and  $\pi o \lambda \delta \zeta$ . These declensions however follow the second declension in masculine and neuter and the first declension in the feminine but have short forms:

The declension of μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα

	Singular			Plural		
Case	Mas	Fem	Neuter	Mas	Fem	Neuter
Nom.	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα	μεγάλοι	πᾶσαι	πάντα
Gen./Abl.	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων
Da/Lo/Ins	μεγαλφ	μεγάλη	μεγαλφ	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις
Acc	μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα	μεγάλους	μεγάλας	μεγάλους

The declension of πολύς, πολλή, πολύ

	Singular			Plural		
Case	Mas	Fem	Neuter	Mas	Fem	Neuter
Nom.	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
Gen./Abl.	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
Da/Lo/Ins	πολλῷ	πολλῆ	πολλῷ	πολλοῖς	πολλᾶις	πολλοῖς
Acc	πολύν	πολλήν	μέγα	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά

The declension of ἀληθής, ἀληθές

	Singular			Plural		
Case	Mas	Fem	Neuter	Mas	Fem	Neuter
Nom.	ἀληθής	ἀληθής	ἀληθές	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῆ
Gen./Abl.	ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθῶν	ἀληθῶν	ἀληθῶν
Da/Lo/Ins	ἀληθεĩ	ἀληθεĩ	ἀληθεĩ	ἀληθέσι(ν)	ἀληθέσι(ν)	ἀληθέσι(ν)
Acc	ἀληθῆ	ἀληθῆ	ἀληθές	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῆ

Please note that in the above declension, the masculine and the feminine forms are perfectly similar while the neuter agrees with them in most instances. This tells you that you need to be very careful as the context will go a long way to tell you what to use at any particular point in time. You need to note too that the stem for  $d\lambda\eta\theta\eta\varsigma$  is  $d\lambda\eta\theta\xi\varsigma$ . Therefore, in most of the forms, the final  $\varsigma$  is dropped and the stem vowel becomes  $\epsilon$  which would now enter into contraction with the connecting vowel. This resulted in the unusual accenting as well as the seeming irregularity with other adjectives that has been declined above.

# 3.5 Comparison of Adjectives

In the adjectival degree of comparison, the Greek language also has three degrees as we have in the English language: the positive, the comparative and the superlative. When the adjective follows the regular declension, the following forms would be used:  $-\tau\epsilon\rho\sigma\varsigma$ ,  $-\alpha$  and  $-\sigma\nu$  in the comparative. Let us use  $i\sigma\chi\rho\rho\delta\varsigma$  as an example: in the

comparative we would have, iσχυρότερος, iσχυρόα and iσχυρόν which would mean stronger in the masculine, feminine and neuter respectively. The superlative degree carries the ending  $-\tau \alpha \tau \sigma \varsigma$ , -η, -ον. Consequently, the superlative degree of iσχυρός would be iσχυρότατος, iσχυρόη and iσχυρόν respectively and it would be translated "strongest". You need to note however that the superlative degree is rare in the New Testament as they are more or less expressed by the comparative forms.

What has been described above is the comparison of adjectives in the regularly declined adjectives. When the adjective is irregular, the stem of the word is usually changed. An example is  $\mu \kappa \rho \delta \zeta$  (little) which has  $\dot{\epsilon} \lambda \dot{\alpha} \sigma \sigma \omega$  (less) in the comparative and  $\dot{\epsilon} \lambda \dot{\alpha} \chi \sigma \tau \delta \zeta$  (least) in the superlative. As a result of this irregularity between the positive form and the comparative and the superlative forms, you are hereby advised to learn such as vocabularies on their own right.

# 3.6 Adverbs

In the Greek language, there is no systematic treatment for the adverbs. Some are formed from the genitive neuter plural adjective. In this case, the  $\nu$  of the genitive neuter plural adjective would be substituted with  $\varsigma$ . For example, the genitive plural of  $\kappa\alpha\lambda\delta\varsigma$  is  $\kappa\alpha\lambda\delta\nu$ ; thus, the adverb would be  $\kappa\alpha\lambda\delta\varsigma$  and would be translated 'well'. The formation of the other adverbs is so diverse that they are better learnt as part of the vocabularies as they occur in your study of the Greek New Testament.

# 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit, you have learnt about the declension of the adjectives of the third declension as well as the other two declensions: the first and the second declensions. You have also been taught here that the adjective can also be used in the predicate position with a participle. You were also shown the declension of  $\dot{\alpha}\lambda\eta\theta\epsilon\sigma$ - that because of the dropping of its final sigma would lead to contraction of vowels and thus is unusually accented.

# 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points that you have learnt in this unit:

- Adjectives are words describing nouns, that is, words that describe or qualify a noun or pronoun.
- Adjectives can be used predicatively, attributively, substantively and along with a participle in a predicate position.
- Comparative degree of the adjective is formed with the following endings:  $\tau\epsilon\rho\sigma\varsigma$ , - $\alpha$  and - $\sigma\nu$ .
- Superlative degree of the adjective is formed with the following endings:  $-\tau \alpha \tau o \varsigma$ ,  $-\eta$ , -ov.

## Self-Assessment Exercise

The following are the major points that you have learnt in this unit:

**1 John 2:1** Τεκνία μου, ταῦτα γράφω ὑμῖν ἵνα μὴ ἀμάρτητε. καὶ ἐάν τις ἁμάρτῃ, παράκλητον ἔχομεν πρὸς τὸν πατέρα Ἰησοῦν Χριστὸν δίκαιον,

**1 John 2:2** καὶ αὐτὸς ἱλασμός ἐστιν περὶ τῶν ἁμαρτιῶν ἡμῶν, οὐ περὶ τῶν ἡμετέρων δὲ μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ ὅλου τοῦ κόσμου.

1 John 2:3 Καὶ ἐν τούτῷ γινώσκομεν ὅτι ἐγνώκαμεν αὐτόν, ἐὰν τὰς ἐντολὰς αὐτοῦ τηρῶμεν.

**1 John 2:4** ὁ λέγων □ὅτι Ἔγνωκα αὐτὸν καὶ τὰς ἐντολὰς αὐτοῦ μὴ τηρῶν ψεύστης ἐστίν, καὶ ἐν τούτῷ ἡ ἀλήθεια οὐκ ἔστιν·

**1 John 2:5** ὃς δ' ἂν τηρῃ αὐτοῦ τὸν λόγον, ἀληθῶς ἐν τούτῷ ἡ ἀγάπη τοῦ θεοῦ τετελείωται. ἐν τούτῷ γινώσκομεν ὅτι ἐν αὐτῷ ἐσμεν·

**1 John 2:6** ὁ λέγων ἐν αὐτῷ μένειν ὀφείλει καθὼς ἐκεῖνος περιεπάτησεν καὶ □αὐτὸς περιπατεῖν.

# 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.
- Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.
- Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# UNIT 2: VERBS OF THE -µ1 CONJUGATION

# Contents

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Vocabulary Study
  - 3.2 Introducing the -μι Verbs
  - 3.3 Characteristics of the -µt Verbs
  - 3.4 -μι Verbs in the Indicative Mood
  - 3.5 -μι Verbs in the Non-Indicative Mood
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References/Further Readings

# 1.0 Introduction

By the end of the last unit you have completed the study of the adjectives. This includes the adjectives of the first, second and third declensions. You have also been taught all the four functions of the adjective as against the three given in undergraduate Greek and you are also shown that some adverbs are formed from the adjectives. In this unit however, you would be exposed to a new type of verbs. Up to this point in your study of the Greek language, you have studied only the same type of verbs because all the verbs you have studied to date are verbs that usually end in  $\omega$  in the first person singular and also have connecting vowels for the other paradigms. These types of verbs are called thematic conjugation verbs because of the use of thematic vowels (also called connecting vowels). In this unit, you would now study the  $-\mu$ t conjugation verbs, that is, verbs that end in  $-\mu$ t.

# 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, you should be able to:

- Identify any –mi conjugation verb
- Explain the characteristics of the –mi conjugation verbs
- Identify the stem of any –mi conjugation verb
- Decline any -mi conjugation verb

# 3.0 MAIN CONTENT

## 3.1 Vocabulary Study

δίδωμι, δώσω, ἕδωκα, δέδωκα, δέδομαιν, έδόθην	I give
ἴστημι, στήσω, ἕστησα (ἕστην), ἕστηκα, ἕσταμαι, έστάθην	I stand
τίθημι, θήσω, ἕθηκα, τέθειμαι, έτέθην	I place, I put

## 3.2 Introducing the -mi Verbs

As you have been told earlier, the -mi conjugation verbs also called athematic conjugation verbs because they do not use thematic vowels in their formation are different kinds of verbs entirely. In the vocabulary study above, you have been given three words that are -mi conjugation verbs. They are also written out in their full forms, that is, it included the present, the future, the first aorist, the perfect and the aorist passive forms.

# 3.3 Characteristics of the -mi Verbs

The main characteristic of the –mi conjugation verbs is that they have their stem reduplicated in the present tense. Secondly, for the vowel of the reduplication, they use i and not the e that is used prominently in the case of the perfect tenses.

In all there are four classes of this verb when classified according to their vowel stem. These are the o-class, the a-class, the e-class and the u-class. Despite this variety however, they follow the same pattern and once you get the pattern for one you would be able to get the others.

# 3.4 -mi Verbs in the Indicative Mood

In the present tense, the stem of the verb reduplicates with  $\iota$ . The active voice uses the long stem vowel  $\omega$  in the singular and  $\sigma$  in the plural while the middle and the passive voice use the short stem  $\sigma$  throughout. In the imperfect, the stem reduplication stays, and the active voice uses the long stem vowel  $\sigma$  in the singular and  $\sigma$  in the plural while the middle and the passive use the short stem vowel  $\sigma$  throughout. In the active voice uses the long stem vowel  $\sigma$  in the singular and  $\sigma$  in the plural while the middle and the passive use the short stem vowel  $\sigma$  throughout. In the active tense, the verb usually changes form entirely and the form would also change in the middle voice and in the passive voice. This is shown in the paradigm below:

Per/No.	Present	Imperfect	Future	Aorist	Perfect
1 <sup>st</sup> Sing	Δίδωμι	έδίδουν	δώσω	ἔδωκα	δέδωκα
2 <sup>nd</sup> Sing	δίδως	έδίδους	δώσεις	ἔδωκας	δέδωκας
3 <sup>rd</sup> Sing	δίδωσι(ν)	έδίδου	δώσει	ἔδωκε(ν)	
1 <sup>st</sup> Plural	Δίδομεν	ἐδίδομεν	δώσομεν	ἐδώκαμεν	δεδώκαμεν
2 <sup>nd</sup> Plural	Δίδοτε	έδίδοτε	δώσετε	ἐδώκατε	δεδώκατε
3 <sup>rd</sup> Plural	διδόασι(ν)	έδίδοσαν	δώσουσι(ν)	ἔδωκαν	δέδωκαν

Study the above paradigm very well so that you can become familiar with the various forms of the  $-\mu\iota$  conjugation verbs, at least in the indicative mood. Below you would be given the present form of  $i\sigma\tau\eta\mu\iota$  and  $\tau i\theta\eta\mu\iota$ :

Person	Sing	gular	Plu	ıral
1 <sup>st</sup>	<b>ἵστημ</b> ι	τίθημι	ίσταμεν	τίθεμεν
2 <sup>nd</sup>	<b>ἵστη</b> ς	τίθης	ίστατε	τίθετε
3 <sup>rd</sup>	ἵστησι(ν)	τίθησι(ν)	ίστᾶσι(ν)	τιθέασι(ν)

## Self-Assessment Exercise

Draw up the imperfect, future, aorist and perfect form of ιστημι and τίθημι.

# **3.5** -μι Verbs in the Non-Indicative Mood

In the other non-indicative moods, it is easier to identify the verbs of the  $-\mu t$  conjugation because they appear in a more regular way. Firstly, in the non-indicative moods, only two tenses, that is, the present and the aorist, are active. For example, in the present subjunctive mood, the stem reduplication as it occurred in the indicative mood stands and the long stem vowels are used throughout with the regular  $\omega$  endings. In the aorist tense however, the active and middle voices would follow the second aorist and the passive would follow the first aorist. The active and the middle voices would use the long stem vowel and the passive would use the short stem. In all the conjugations there would be vowel contraction as the vowels ending the stem and beginning the endings would come together. Try to find these explanations in the paradigm below for  $\delta i \delta \omega \mu t$ :

## The Subjunctive Mood for δίδωμι:

Per/No.	Present	Second Aorist
1 <sup>st</sup> Person-Sing	διδῶ	δῶ
2 <sup>nd</sup> Person-Sing	διδῷς	δῷς
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person-Sing	διδῷ	δῷ
1 <sup>st</sup> Person-Plural	διδῶμεν	δῶμεν
2 <sup>nd</sup> Person-Plural	διδῶτε	δῶτε
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person-Plural	διδῶσι(ν)	δῶσι(ν)

### The Imperative Mood for δίδωμι:

Per/No.	Present	Second Aorist
2 <sup>nd</sup> Person-Sing	Δίδου	δός
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person-Sing	διδότω	δότω
2 <sup>nd</sup> Person-Plural	δίδοτε	δότε
3 <sup>rd</sup> Person-Plural	διδότωσαν	δότωσαν

### The Infinitive for δίδωμι:

Voices	Present	Second Aorist
Active	διδόναι	δοῦναι
Middle	δίδοσθαι	δόσθαι
Passive	δίδοσθαι	δοθῆναι

#### 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit you have been exposed to the  $-\mu \iota$  conjugation verbs otherwise known as the athematic verbs. You have been told that they are called athematic verbs because they don't use thematic vowels in their conjugation. You have also been taught that they are characterized mostly by the reduplication of their stem. You have also been shown the various conjugations of these verbs in both the indicative and the non-indicative moods.

#### 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points that you have learnt in this unit:

- $-\mu\iota$  conjugation verbs, are verbs that end in  $-\mu\iota$  and they are also called athematic verbs because they do not make use of thematic vowels in their conjugation.
- The main characteristic of the  $-\mu\iota$  conjugation verbs is that they have their stem reduplicated in the present tense.
- For the vowel of the reduplication, they use  $\iota$  and not and not the  $\varepsilon$  that is used prominently in the case of the perfect tenses.
- In all, there are four classes of this verb when classified according to their vowel stem. These are the o-class, the a-class, the e-class and the u-class.

Despite this variety however, they follow the same pattern and once you get the pattern for one you would be able to get the others.

# Self-Assessment Exercise

Translate the following passage to English:

**1 John 2:7** □Άγαπητοί, οὐκ ἐντολὴν καινὴν γράφω ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἐντολὴν παλαιὰν ῆν εἴχετε ἀπ' ἀρχῆς· ἡ ἐντολὴ ἡ παλαιά ἐστιν ὁ λόγος ὃν □ἠκούσατε.

**1 John 2:8** πάλιν ἐντολὴν καινὴν γράφω ὑμῖν, ὅ ἐστιν ἀληθὲς ἐν αὐτῷ καὶ ἐν ὑμῖν, ὅτι ἡ σκοτία παράγεται καὶ τὸ φῶς τὸ ἀληθινὸν ἤδη φαίνει.

1 John 2:9 ὁ λέγων ἐν τῷ φωτὶ εἶναι καὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν αὐτοῦ μισῶν ἐν τῆ σκοτία ἐστὶν ἕως ἄρτι.

**1 John 2:10** ὁ ἀγαπῶν τὸν ἀδελφὸν αὐτοῦ ἐν τῷ φωτὶ μένει, καὶ σκάνδαλον ἐν αὐτῷ οὐκ ἔστιν·

1 John 2:11 ό δὲ μισῶν τὸν ἀδελφὸν αὐτοῦ ἐν τῆ σκοτία ἐστὶν καὶ ἐν τῆ σκοτία περιπατεῖ, καὶ οὐκ οἶδεν ποῦ ὑπάγει, ὅτι ἡ σκοτία ἐτύφλωσεν τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς αὐτοῦ.

# 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.
- Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.
- Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# UNIT 3: THE ARTICLE

### Contents

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Vocabulary Study
  - 3.2 The Article in Greek Language
  - 3.3 Ordinary Use of the Article
  - 3.4 Special Use of the Article
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References/Further Readings

## **1.0** Introduction

In undergraduate Greek you have you have been introduced to the articles of the Greek language by gender, case and number. By way of summary to refresh your memory, the Greek language has no indefinite article and the definite articles are  $\dot{o}$ ,  $\dot{\eta}$  and  $\tau \dot{o}$  in the nominative singular. In that lesson you were given only one major function of the definite article, which is called the articular use. In this unit, you will continue the study if definite articles in the Greek language and go through all the uses of the article both ordinary and special.

## 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, you should be able to:

- Identify all articles by gender, case and number
- List the ordinary uses of the articles
- List the special uses of the articles

# 3.0 Main Content

# 3.1 Vocabulary Study

ἀλαζονία, ἡ	vainglory	ἀφίημι	I forgive
νεανίσκος, ὁ	a young man	νικάω	I overcome, conquer
βίος, ὁ	life*	ἔγνωκα	(perfect active of γινώσκω)

\*Note: Compare  $\beta$ io $\varsigma$  with  $\zeta \omega \eta$  and  $\psi \upsilon \chi \eta$  in the lexicon and note the differences.

# 3.2 The Article in Greek Language

As you have been told, the basic function of the Greek article is to identify. However, you need to note a differentiation in this function. When the article is used with a substantive, the identity of the substantive is emphasized. For example,  $\dot{o} \ \ddot{\alpha}\nu\theta\rho\omega\pi\sigma\varsigma$  meaning 'the man' refers to a particular man, thus giving a specific identity. This difference could be seen more graphically when the article is used with  $\theta\epsilon\delta\varsigma$ . When  $\dot{o} \ \theta\epsilon\delta\varsigma$  is written it refers to the divine Person and would be translated 'God'. However, without the article  $\theta\epsilon\delta\varsigma$  is used for the divine character or essence and would be translated "divine". This is why terms such as  $\dot{o}\rho\gamma\dot{\rho} \ \Theta\epsilon\sigma\tilde{o}$  was translated "divine wrath" and  $\delta\iota\kappa\alpha\iota\sigma\sigma\acute{o}\nu\eta \ \Theta\epsilon\sigma\tilde{o}$  was also translated "divine righteousness" in the epistle to the Romans.

# 3.3 Ordinary Use of the Article

In this sub-section, we are going to list the ordinary functions of the article citing examples:

- 1. To point out particular objects as in  $\dot{o} \, \ddot{\alpha} \nu \theta \rho \omega \pi o \zeta$  (the man) and  $\dot{\eta} \, \beta \alpha \sigma \iota \lambda \epsilon i \alpha$  (the kingdom).
- 2. Articles are used in the Greek language along with abstract nouns though this usage is not found in English language. Examples are  $\dot{\eta} \dot{\alpha}\lambda\dot{\eta}\theta\epsilon\alpha$  (truth) and  $\dot{\eta} \chi\dot{\alpha}\rho\iota\zeta$  (grace).
- 3. Articles are used in the Greek language with proper nouns. This usage too is not found in English language. Examples are  $\delta \Pi \epsilon \tau \pi \sigma \zeta$  (Peter) and  $\delta \Pi \sigma \sigma \tilde{\upsilon} \zeta$  (Jesus).
- Articles are used in the Greek language with classes or groups of things. This usage is also not found in English language. Examples are: αἰ ἀλώπεκες (foxes) and τὰ πετεινά (birds).
- 5. Articles are used in the Greek language along with pronouns especially in the possessive pronouns. Examples are: ὁ σὸς οἶκος (your house) and ὁ ἴδιος οἶκος (his house).

- 6. Articles are used in the Greek language along with adverbs. An example is:  $\dot{\alpha}\pi\dot{o}\tau\sigma\tilde{v}v\tilde{v}v$ , which literally means "from the now," that is, "from the present moment" in polished English.
- 7. Articles are also used in the Greek language along with infinitives as in  $\dot{\epsilon}v \tau \tilde{\varphi} \sigma \pi \epsilon i \rho \epsilon i v$ , which means "in the to sow," that is, "while he was sowing" in polished English.
- Finally, in the Greek language, articles are used along with prepositional phrases as in oi ἐν τῷ οἴκῷ which would literally read "the in the house ones," that is, "the men who are in the house."

## 3.4 Special Use of the Article

In this sub-unit we would be looking at the special use of the article in the Greek language.

## The use of the article with the conjunction καὶ

In this case, there are two different usages:

- Firstly, if the two nouns that are joined together by the conjunction have the definite article, it means that they refer to two different people or things. For example, ὁ ἀπόστολος καὶ ὁ μαθητής which means "the apostle and the disciple". The use of the definite article for the two means that the apostle is a different person from the disciple.
- Secondly, if the first of the two nouns has the definite article and the second noun does not, it means that the two nouns refer to the same person or thing. For example, ὁ ἀπόστολος καὶ μαθητής which means "the apostle and disciple". This usage means that the person who is the apostle is also the one who is the disciple.

## The use of the article with the conjunction $\mu \acute{e}v...\delta \acute{e}$

The definite article is also used with the conjunction  $\mu \acute{\epsilon} v \dots \acute{\delta} \acute{\epsilon}$  and when this is done, it gives the force of an alternative pronoun. For example, oi  $\mu \acute{\epsilon} v ~ \eta \acute{\sigma} \alpha v ~ \sigma \acute{v} v ~ \tau ~ \sigma \acute{\zeta}$ 'Iov $\delta \alpha i \acute{\delta} \acute{\epsilon} ~ \sigma \acute{v} v ~ \tau ~ \sigma \acute{\zeta} \acute{\alpha} \sigma \sigma \tau \acute{\delta} \lambda \sigma ;$  would be translated "*Some* were with the Jews, but *others* were with the apostles". Note that in this translation, it is the use of the definite article that turns the translation of  $\mu \acute{\epsilon} v \dots \acute{\delta} \acute{\epsilon}$  to 'some ... others'.

## The use of the article with the force of a demonstrative pronoun

The definite article is sometimes used with a demonstrative pronoun so as to carry the force of a demonstrative. For example, oi oùv  $\eta\rho\omega\tau\omega\nu$  autov which is translated "*these*, therefore, were asking him."

#### The use of the article with the force of a possessive pronoun

As you have been told earlier, the article can be used with the force of a possessive pronoun. For example,  $\sigma\nu\nu\epsilon\pi\epsilon\mu\nu\mu\mu\epsilon\nu\mu\epsilon\tau'\alpha\nu\sigma\nu$  tov  $\alpha\delta\epsilon\lambda\phi\sigma\nu$  which would be "we have sent him with his brother". Remember that 'his brother' literally in Greek is 'the brother of him' and this is the force of the article in the possessive pronoun.

# The use of the article with the force of a relative pronoun

The article can also be used with the force of a relative pronoun. For example, τοῦτο γάρ ἐστιν τὸ αἶμα μου τῆς διαθήκης τὸ περὶ πολλῶν ἐκχυννόμενον which would be translated "for this is my blood of the new covenant which is shed for many". You need to take note of the definite article before peri\. It functions as the force of a relative pronoun.

# The use of the article with nouns joined by forms of εἰμὶ:

This can also take place in two instances:

- 1. If one of the two nouns joined by any form of  $\epsilon i\mu i$  has the definite article, it has to be regarded as the subject of the sentences and the anarthrous (that is, the one without the definite article) one as the predicate. An example is:  $\delta \Theta \epsilon \delta \zeta$   $d\gamma d\pi \eta \, d\sigma \tau \nu$  which would be translated "God is love". Thus, in the sentence,  $\delta \Theta \epsilon \delta \zeta$ , the noun carrying the definite article has been taken as the subject.
- If both nouns have the definite article, they are interchangeable as to subject and predicate and you may need the context to determine which would be the subject and which would be the predicate. An example is ή δύναμις τῆς ἁμαρτίας ἐστὶν ὁ νόμος could be translated as "the power of sin is the law" as well as "the law is the power of sin".

# 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit, you have continued the study of the use definite articles in the Greek language. You had a brief review of the functions of the definite article and we began with the study of the ordinary functions of the definite article which include usages with abstract nouns, pronouns, adverbs and infinitives. You then continued with the study of the special use of the definite article which includes the use of the definite article with the conjunction  $\kappa\alpha$  and also with  $\mu$   $\hat{v} \dots \delta$   $\hat{e}$ .

## 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points you have learnt in this unit:

- When the article is used with a substantive, the identity of the substantive is emphasized.
- Articles are used in the Greek language along with abstract nouns. Articles are used in the Greek language with proper nouns.
- Articles are used in the Greek language along with pronouns.
- If the two nouns that are joined together by the conjunction have the definite article, it means that they refer to two different people or things.
- If the first of the two nouns has the definite article and the second noun does not, it means that the two nouns refer to the same person or thing.
- The definite article is also used with the conjunction  $\mu \hat{\epsilon} v \dots \delta \hat{\epsilon}$  and when this is done, it gives the force of an alternative pronoun.
- If one of the two nouns joined by any form of ɛiµì has the definite article, it has to be regarded as the subject of the sentences and the anarthrous (that is, the one without the definite article) one as the predicate.

If both nouns have the definite article, they are interchangeable as to subject and predicate and you may need the context to determine which would be the subject and which would be the predicate.

## Self-Assessment Exercise

1 John2:12 Γράφω ὑμῖν, τεκνία, ὅτι ἀφέωνται ὑμῖν αἱ ἁμαρτίαι διὰ τὸ ὄνομα αὐτοῦ·

**1 John2:13** γράφω ὑμῖν, πατέρες, ὅτι ἐγνώκατε τὸν ἀπ' ἀρχῆς· γράφω ὑμῖν, νεανίσκοι, ὅτι νενικήκατε τὸν πονηρόν.

1 John2:14 ἕγραψα ὑμῖν, παιδία, ὅτι ἐγνώκατε τὸν πατέρα· ἔγραψα ὑμῖν, πατέρες, ὅτι ἐγνώκατε τὸν ἀπ' ἀρχῆς· ἔγραψα ὑμῖν, νεανίσκοι, ὅτι ἰσχυροί ἐστε καὶ ὁ λόγος τοῦ θεοῦ ἐν ὑμῖν μένει καὶ νενικήκατε τὸν πονηρόν.

**1 John2:15** Mỳ ἀγαπᾶτε τὸν κόσμον μηδὲ τὰ ἐν τῷ κόσμῳ. ἐάν τις ἀγαπῷ τὸν κόσμον, οὐκ ἔστιν ἡ ἀγάπη τοῦ πατρὸς ἐν αὐτῷ·

1 John2:16 ὅτι πᾶν τὸ ἐν τῷ κόσμῷ, ἡ ἐπιθυμία τῆς σαρκὸς καὶ ἡ ἐπιθυμία τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν καὶ ἡ ἀλαζονεία τοῦ βίου, οὐκ ἔστιν ἐκ τοῦ πατρός, ἀλλὰ ἐκ τοῦ κόσμου ἐστίν·

**1 John2:17** καὶ ὁ κόσμος παράγεται καὶ ἡ ἐπιθυμία αὐτοῦ, ὁ δὲ ποιῶν τὸ θέλημα τοῦ θεοῦ μένει εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα.

# 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.
- Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.

Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# UNIT 4: THE INFINITIVE

## Contents

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Vocabulary Study
  - 3.2 The Forms of the Infinitive
  - 3.3 The Infinitive as a Verb
  - 3.4 The Infinitive as a Noun
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References/Further Readings

#### **1.0** Introduction

In the previous unit, you have completed the study of the articles in the Greek language. You have seen most of the functions of the articles, both ordinary and special functions and the importance of the articles in the syntactical analysis. In this unit, which is going to be the last unit of this module, and also the last of all theoretical studies, you are going to study about the infinitives. Infinitives, as you have known, are verbal nouns, that is, they have both the characteristics of the verbs and also of the noun.

#### 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, you should be able to:

- Identify any infinitive by sight
- List the characteristics of the infinitive as a noun
- List the characteristics of the infinitive as a verb
- Discuss the functions of the infinitive in Greek language

# 3.0 Main Content

## 3.1 Vocabulary Study

ἀντίχριστος, ὁ	antichrist	<b>ὑμολογέ</b> ω	I confess
ἁρωέομααι	I deny	φανερόω	I make manifest
ἐπαγέλλω	I announce	χρῖσμα, -ατος, τὸ	anointing
ψεῦδο, -ους, τὸ	lie		
οἶδα	I know (this is the p	perfect tense of εἴδω,	an already obsolete
	word; when this is	used it carries the for	ce of present tense)

# **3.2** The Forms of the Infinitive

Though you have learnt this at the undergraduate level, you would be given some of the forms again by way of refreshing your memory. Below you would see the forms of the infinitive in the present, the first aorist, the second aorist and the perfect tenses. The word to be used is the usual one, that is,  $\lambda \dot{\omega}$ :

### **Present Tense of** λίω:

Tense/Voice	Form of Infinitive	Translation
Present Active	λύειν	to loose
Present Middle	λύεσθαι	to loose for oneself
Present Passive	λύεσθαι	to be loosed

#### **First Aorist Tense of** λύω:

Tense/Voice	Form of Infinitive	Translation
First Aorist Active	λύσαι	to loose
First Aorist Middle	λύσασθαι	to loose for oneself
First Aorist Passive	λυθῆναι	to be loosed

## **Perfect Tense of** λύω:

Tense/Voice	Form of Infinitive	Translation
Perfect Active	λελυκέναι	to have loosed
Perfect Middle	λελύσθαι	to have loosed for oneself
Perfect Passive	<b>λελύσθαι</b>	to have been loosed

#### **Second Aorist Tense of λιπῶ:**

Tense/Voice	Form of Infinitive	Translation
Second Aorist Active	λιπεῖν	to leave

Second Aorist Middle	λιπέσθαι	to leave for oneself
Second Aorist Passive	λιπέσθαι	to have been left

NB: The second a orist has to use another word because there is no second a orist form for  $\lambda \dot{\omega} \omega.$ 

# **3.3** The Infinitive as a Verb

As a verb, the infinitive has voice and tense. As a verb also, the infinitive may also take an object and it may be modified by adverbs. The following are the verbal functions of the infinitive:

## To express the purpose of the main verb:

One of the functions of the infinitive is to let the purpose of the main verb be explicit. For example,  $\mu\dot{\eta}$  νομίσητε ὅτι ἦλθον καταλῦσαι τὸν νόμον which means "do not conclude that I have come to destroy the law".

## To express the result of the main verb:

Though the expression of result may be easily confused, in the Greek language the two are treated differently. The common way of doing this is to use the clause introduced by  $\overleftarrow{\omega}\sigma\tau\epsilon$ . In this case,  $\overleftarrow{\omega}\sigma\tau\epsilon$  would be followed by an infinitive and not the finite verb which would be natural. An example is:  $\grave{\epsilon}\gamma \acute{\epsilon}\nu\epsilon\tau \acute{\omega}$ ,  $\overleftarrow{\omega}\sigma\tau\epsilon$  toùç  $\pi o\lambda\lambdao\grave{\epsilon}\chi \acute{\epsilon}\gamma\epsilon\imath\nu$   $\breve{\sigma}\tau\iota$   $\grave{\alpha}\pi\acute{\epsilon}\theta\alpha\nu\epsilon\nu$  which would be translated "he became as a dead man so that many said that he died." The clause  $\overleftarrow{\omega}\sigma\tau\epsilon$  toùç  $\lambda\acute{\epsilon}\gamma\epsilon\imath\nu$   $\breve{\sigma}\tau\iota$   $\grave{\alpha}\pi\acute{\epsilon}\theta\alpha\nu\epsilon\nu$  is the result clause introduced by  $\overleftarrow{\omega}\sigma\tau\epsilon$ .

## To express temporal ideas:

There are three usages under this function:

- 'Before' is expressed by the use of the infinitive and πρίν or πρὶν ἤ as in Κύριε, κατέβηθι πρὶν ἀποθανεῖν τὸ παιδίον μου which would be translated "Lord, come down before my child dies". Note however that this same function can be expressed by πρὸ τοῦ and the infinitive.
- 'While' is expressed by the use of the infinitive and ἐν τῷ as in ἐθαύμασον ἐν τῷ χρονίζειν τῷ ναῷ αὐτόν which would be translated "they were wondering while he was tarrying in the temple."
- 'After' is expressed by the use of the infinitive and μετὰ τό as in παρέστησεν ἑαθτὸν ζῶντα μετὰ τὸ παθεῖν αὐτόν which would be translated "he showed himself alive after his suffering."

## To express cause:

In order to express cause, the infinitive would be used with  $\delta_{i\dot{\alpha}}$  tó as in oùk ἔχετε  $\delta_{i\dot{\alpha}}$  tò μὴ αἰτεῖσθαι ὑμᾶς which would be translated "you have not because you ask not."

## 3.4 The Infinitive as a Noun

As a noun, the infinitive originally has an inflection which has been lost. However, because of its noun quality, the infinitive can be used in any way the noun can be used.

# The Infinitive as the Subject of a Finite Verb

As had been said earlier, because the infinitive has the characteristics of a noun, it can be used as a substantive, that is, the subject of a sentence or clause. An example is, oùk vµῶν ἐστὶν γνῶναι χρόνους ἤ καιρούς which would be translated "To know times and seasons is not yours". Please not that in this usage at times, the definite article can precede the infinitive as in τὸ ἐσθίειν ἀγαθόν which would be translated "to eat is good". Note the definite article in front of ἐσθίειν.

# The Infinitive as the Object of a Verb

Also, as a noun, the infinitive can also serve as the direct object of a verb as in  $\dot{0}$ Inforig notein rate  $\pi$  and  $\pi$  an

## The Infinitive as a Modifier

The New Testament abounds with examples of the infinitives that are used as modifiers. An example is  $\tilde{\eta}\lambda\theta\epsilon\nu$  is  $\kappa\alpha\iota\rho\delta\zeta$  too vector vector vector which would be translated "the time of the dead to be judged has come". In this instance, the infinitive modifies a noun, but it could as well modify an adjective.

## 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit you have studied extensively about the functions of the infinitive. You have seen its characteristics as a noun and as a verb as well as its functions as a noun and as a verb. You have been taught also the various forms of the infinitive in the available tenses and voices.

## 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points you have been taught in this unit:

- As a verb, the infinitive has voice and tense.
- As a verb, the infinitive is used to express the purpose of the verb, to express the result of the main verb, to express temporal ideas and to express the cause of the infinitive.

• As a noun, the infinitive originally has inflection and so it functions as a substantive, as an object (both direct and indirect) and as a modifier.

# Self-Assessment Exercise

Translate the following passage:

**1 John 2:18** Παιδία, ἐσχάτη ὥρα ἐστίν, καὶ καθὼς ἠκούσατε □ὅτι ἀντίχριστος ἔρχεται, καὶ νῦν ἀντίχριστοι πολλοὶ γεγόνασιν· ὅθεν γινώσκομεν ὅτι ἐσχάτη ὥρα ἐστίν.

**1** John 2:19 ἐξ ἡμῶν ἐξῆλθαν, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἦσαν ἐξ ἡμῶν· εἰ γὰρ  $\Box$  ἐξ ἡμῶν ἦσαν $\Box$ , μεμενήκεισαν ἂν μεθ' ἡμῶν· ἀλλ' ἵνα φανερωθῶσιν ὅτι οὐκ εἰσὶν πάντες ἐξ ἡμῶν.

1 John 2:20 καὶ ὑμεῖς χρῖσμα ἔχετε ἀπὸ τοῦ ἁγίου □καὶ οἴδατε □πάντες·

**1 John 2:21** οὐκ ἔγραψα ὑμῖν ὅτι οὐκ οἴδατε τὴν ἀλήθειαν, ἀλλ' ὅτι οἴδατε αὐτήν, καὶ ὅτι πᾶν ψεῦδος ἐκ τῆς ἀληθείας οὐκ ἔστιν.

**1 John 2:22** τίς ἐστιν ὁ ψεύστης εἰ μὴ ὁ ἀρνούμενος ὅτι Ἰησοῦς οὐκ ἔστιν ὁ χριστός; οὖτός ἐστιν ὁ ἀντίχριστος, ὁ ἀρνούμενος τὸν πατέρα καὶ τὸν υἱόν.

**1 John 2:23** πᾶς ὁ ἀρνούμενος τὸν υἰὸν οὐδὲ τὸν πατέρα ἔχει·  $\Box$ ἱ ὁμολογῶν τὸν υἰὸν καὶ τὸν πατέρα ἔχει $\Box$ .

**1 John 2:24** □ύμεῖς ὃ ἠκούσατε ἀπ' ἀρχῆς, ἐν ὑμῖν μενέτω· ἐὰν ἐν ὑμῖν μείνῃ ὃ ἀπ' ἀρχῆς ἠκούσατε, καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐν τῷ υίῷ καὶ ἐν τῷ πατρὶ μενεῖτε.

1 John 2:25 καὶ αὕτη ἐστὶν ἡ ἐπαγγελία ἢν αὐτὸς ἐπηγγείλατο ἡμῖν, τὴν ζωὴν τὴν αἰώνιον.

1 John 2:26 Ταῦτα ἔγραψα ὑμῖν περὶ τῶν πλανώντων ὑμᾶς.

**1 John 2:27** καὶ ὑμεῖς τὸ χρῖσμα ὃ ἐλάβετε ἀπ' αὐτοῦ □μένει ἐν ὑμῖν□, καὶ οὐ χρείαν ἔχετε ἵνα τις διδάσκῃ ὑμᾶς· ἀλλ' ὡς τὸ □αὐτοῦ χρῖσμα διδάσκει ὑμᾶς περὶ πάντων, καὶ ἀληθές ἐστιν καὶ οὐκ ἔστιν ψεῦδος, καὶ καθὼς ἐδίδαξεν ὑμᾶς, □μένετε ἐν αὐτῷ.

**1 John 2:28** Kaì vũv, τεκνία, μένετε ἐν αὐτῷ, ἵνα  $\Box$ ἐἀν φανερωθῃ  $\Box$ σχῶμεν παρρησίαν καὶ μὴ αἰσχυνθῶμεν ἀπ' αὐτοῦ ἐν τῃ παρουσία αὐτοῦ.

**1 John 2:29** Ἐὰν εἰδῆτε ὅτι δίκαιός ἐστιν, γινώσκετε □ὅτι πᾶς ὁ ποιῶν τὴν δικαιοσύνην ἐξ αὐτοῦ γεγέννηται.

# 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies

Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.

Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.

Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# **MODULE 4**

Unit 1:	Syntactical Issues in Greek Nouns and Pronouns
Unit 2:	Syntactical Issues in Greek Verbs I
Unit 3:	Syntactical Issues in Greek Verbs II
Unit 4:	Syntactical Issues in Adjectives and Imperfect Tense
TTait 5.	Sympositical Language in Douticinlag

Unit 5: Syntactical Issues in Participles

## UNIT 1: SYNTACTICAL ISSUES IN GREEK NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

## Content

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Syntactical Issues in Nominative Case
  - 3.2 Syntactical Issues in Genitive Case
  - 3.3 Syntactical Issues in Pronouns
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References and Further Readings

## 1.0 Introduction

I welcome you to Module Four, which is the final module in this course. This module is going to be more practical than the theoretical studies you have faced in the earlier modules. Let me tell you that syntactical issues are better learnt by examining what the other scholars have said about them and then allowing your own mind to grapple with the Greek text if you can get at some. In this module then, you will look at what scholars have said about the syntactical relationships among the nouns, especially when words appear in certain cases. The last part would then be your analysis of a given biblical passage wherein you are expected to examine for syntax. I wish you happy reading and study.

# 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- Identify how translations of nouns in cases affect translations
- Explain the controversy surrounding the translation of John 1:1
- Discuss how to distinguish the subject from the subject complement when two nouns occur in the nominative case
- Explain the difference in translation of Luke 2:14 between King James' Version and other modern versions

# 3.0 MAIN CONTENT

## 3.1 Syntactical Issues in Nominative Case

As you would remember, the nominative case in the Greek language takes care of two noun functions: the subject and the subject complement are both put in the nominative case. When this happens, the Greek sentence would then have two nouns in the nominative case. Now, unlike the English language where the functions of the words are distinguished by the word order, it is easy to determine which out of the two nouns is the subject and which is the subject complement. For example, in English language, the normal order is that the subject is placed in the first position in the sentence. For example, in the sentence, Musa is a boy, it is clear that 'Musa' is the subject and 'boy' is the subject complement. However, in the Greek language, word order is used for emphasis and so it could be very fluid. This would thus raise the problem of identifying which out of the nouns in the nominative case would be the subject and which would be the subject complement. Sometimes this issue could raise serious problems that would not only be syntactical but also theological as in the case of John 1:1 which reads:

Έν ἀρχῆ ἦν ὁ λόγος, καὶ ὁ λόγος ἦν πρὸς τὸν θεόν, καὶ θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος.

If you look carefully at the above sentence, you would discover that the last phrase  $\kappa \alpha i$  $\theta \epsilon \delta \zeta \tilde{\eta} v \delta \lambda \delta \gamma \circ \zeta$  has two nouns in the nominative case, namely  $\theta \epsilon \delta \zeta$  and  $\lambda \delta \gamma \circ \zeta$ .

Orthodox translation of this phrase that has been acceptable to the Christian Church has been "and the Word was God". This position has been taken because we know that the word is the subject because it carries the definite article. This phrase however would pose two questions:

- 1. Why was  $\theta \varepsilon \delta \zeta$  thrown forward?
- 2. What is the reason for the lack of article for  $\theta \varepsilon \delta \varsigma$ ?

In answering this question, Wallace (1995) has the following to say:

The emphatic position of  $\theta \epsilon \delta \zeta$  stresses its essence or quality: "What God was, the Word was" is how one translation brings out this force. Its lack of a definite article keeps us from identifying the person of the Word (Jesus Christ) with the person of "God" (the Father). That is to say, the word order tells us that Jesus Christ has all the divine attributes that the Father has; lack of the article tells us that Jesus Christ is not the Father. John's wording here is beautifully compact! It is, in fact, one of the most elegantly terse theological statements one could ever find. As Martin Luther said, the lack of an article is against Sabellianism; the word order is against Arianism.

He went further to explain this position by giving three various constructions of the same phrase and the most likely translation:

Greek Phrase	English Translation	Position
καὶ ὁ λόγος ἦν ὁ θεὸς	and the Word was the God	Sabellianism
καὶ ὁ λόγος ἦν θεὸς	and the Word was a god	Arianism
καὶ θεὸς ἦν ὁ λόγος	and the Word was God	Orthodoxy

## **3.2** Syntactical Issues in Genitive Case

Like you have also been taught, the genitive case is the case that is used as the possessive case in the Greek language. The implication of the use of the genitive is brought out very well in Luke 2:14. Examine the following translations of the verse:

Version	Translation		
King James' Version	Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, good will		
King James Version	toward men.		
New American	Glory to God in the highest, And on earth peace among men		
Standard Bible	with whom He is pleased.		
New International	Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace to men on		
Version	whom his favor rests.		

The difference between the King James' Version and the other versions as seen above is due to the rendition of the manuscript that the King James' Version is based upon. Most modern Greek New Testament reads:

δόξα ἐν ὑψίσοις Θεῷ καὶ ἐπὶ γῆς εἰρήνη ἐν ἀνθρώποις εὐδοκίας

However, the Greek manuscript upon which the King James' Version is based used εὐδοκία instead of εὐδοκίας. If you remember your declension system very well, you would note that εὐδοκία is in the nominative while εὐδοκίας is in the genitive. The genitive would then literally be translated "of good will" and not just "good will" or "characterizes by God's good pleasure". This is to say that the peace that the sang about as belonging to the earth as a result of the birth of Jesus Christ cannot be said to be general (as the King James' Version would have implied) but it is limited to those who have obtained favour with God (as the other translations imply). Undoubtedly, the peace belonged only to those who have expressed faith in Jesus Christ.

## **3.3** Syntactical Issues in Pronouns

To address the importance of the pronouns syntactically, I would be indebted to the beautiful piece written by Michael Wilkins as reported by Mounce (1993).

Matthew regularly displays in his account of the Saviour's earthly life and ministry in order to accentuate truths that are important for devotion and doctrine. This precision is quite evident in the genealogy Matthew used to introduce Jesus Christ at the beginning of his Gospel. Let me cite some of the verses as an example:

<sup>1</sup> The record of the genealogy of Jesus the Messiah, the son of David, the son of Abraham: <sup>2</sup> Abraham was the father of Isaac, Isaac the father of Jacob, and Jacob the father of Judah and his brothers. <sup>3</sup> Judah was the father of Perez and Zerah by Tamar, Perez was the father of Hezron, and Hezron the father of Ram. <sup>16</sup> Jacob was the father of Joseph the husband of Mary, by whom Jesus was born, who is called the Messiah (Matthew 1:1-3, 16)

If you examine the above passage very well, you would notice that in verse 1-3, Matthew had established a pattern through which he was explaining the genealogy. It was established through patriarchal line which was in line with the Jewish culture. When the listing got to the point of Joseph as the father of Jesus Christ, it was stated clearly in verse 16, that 'Jacob was the father of Joseph the husband of Mary, by whom Jesus was born.'

In English language, the sentence is ambiguous in that the pronoun 'by whom' could refer either to Joseph or Mary. This ambiguity is however taken care of by Matthew's precision. In the Greek text, this is what he wrote:

Ίακὼβ δὲ ἐγέννησεν τὸν Ἰωςὴφ τὸν ἄνδρα Μαρίας, ἐξ ἦς ἐγεννήθη Ἰησοῦς ὁ λεγόμενος χριστός

If you remember what you have been taught,  $\tilde{\eta}_{\zeta}$  is the relative pronoun of the feminine gender and so it would refer specifically to Mary and not Joseph. Thus, "the feminine gender of  $\tilde{\eta}_{\zeta}$  prepares for the virgin birth by shifting attention from Joseph to Mary." The Greek relative pronoun is a subtle signature of the relationship of one substantive to another. Here, by the use of the feminine form the author intentionally stresses that Mary is the mother of our Lord, and later he will clarify that the conception is miraculous, brought about by the Spirit of God coming upon her.

This clarification on the direct agency of the birth of Christ is made possible by the use of the passive voice, but it is not our focus here. From this example, you would have seen the importance of the relative pronoun especially as it has to do with the use of case and gender in ascertaining specificity.

Another beautiful illustration of the import of the pronouns lies in the use of the pronoun in the nominative. If you would remember, you have been taught that the Greek sentence does not really need a subject because every Greek verb carries its own subject. In other words, through the endings of the verbs, the pronoun to be used as the subject is already indicated. If the writer now uses another pronoun in the nominative, it is done for the sake of emphasis. This usage comes up about seven

major times in the gospel of John, where the author quoted Jesus as using the pronoun  $\dot{\epsilon}\gamma\omega$  and the verb 'to be' ( $\epsilon$ íµí) along with the masculine definite article  $\dot{\circ}9$ . The major passages are quoted below:

Passage	Greek Text	English Translation
John 6:35	□Εἶπεν αὐτοῖς ὁ Ἰησοῦς· Ἐγώ εἰμι ὁ ἄρτος τῆς ζωῆς· ὁ ἐρχόμενος πρὸς ἐμὲ οὐ μὴ πεινάσῃ, καὶ ὁ πιστεύων εἰς □ἐμὲ οὐ μὴ □διψήσει πώποτε.	
John 8:12	Πάλιν οὖν αὐτοῖς □ἐλάλησεν ὁ Ἰησοῦς□ λέγων· Ἐγώ εἰμι τὸ φῶς τοῦ κόσμου· ὁ ἀκολουθῶν □ἐμοὶ οὐ μὴ περιπατήσῃ ἐν τῆ σκοτία, ἀλλ' ἕξει τὸ φῶς τῆς ζωῆς.	of the world; he who follows
John 10:7	Εἶπεν οὖν πάλιν □αὐτοῖς ὁ Ἰησοῦς· Ἀμὴν ἀμὴν λέγω ὑμῖν □ὅτι ἐγώ εἰμι ἡ θύρα τῶν προβάτων.	_
John 10:11	Ἐγώ εἰμι ὁ ποιμὴν ὁ καλός· ὁ ποιμὴν ὁ καλὸς τὴν ψυχὴν αὐτοῦ τίθησιν ὑπὲρ τῶν προβάτων·	
John 11:25	εἶπεν αὐτῆ ὁ Ἰησοῦς· Ἐγώ εἰμι ἡ ἀνάστασις καὶ ἡ ζωή· ὁ πιστεύων εἰς ἐμὲ κἂν ἀποθάνῃ ζήσεται,	Jesus said to her, " <b>I am the</b> <b>resurrection and the life</b> ; he who believes in Me will live even if he dies,
John 14:6	λέγει αὐτῷ □ὁ Ἰησοῦς· Ἐγώ εἰμι ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ ἡ ἀλήθεια καὶ ἡ ζωή· οὐδεὶς ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν πατέρα εἰ μὴ δι' ἐμοῦ.	Jesus said to him, " <b>I am the</b> way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father but through Me.
John 15:1	Ἐγώ εἰμι ἡ ἄμπελος ἡ ἀληθινή, καὶ ὁ πατήρ μου ὁ γεωργός ἐστιν	" <b>I am the true vine</b> , and My Father is the vinedresser.

In all these usages, Jesus is actually emphasizing who he is. It is as if he is saying I myself (imagine when we talk and beat our chest with all assurance), I am the .... Using John 6:5, as an example, Jesus is saying that no one apart from him is the bread of life.

It is important to know also that Jesus' use of  $\dot{\epsilon}\gamma\dot{\omega}$   $\epsilon\dot{\iota}\mu$  points back to the Old Testament. When Moses asked for the name of God in the burning bush encounter, he was given the name YHWH (translated "I am who I am"). In the Septuagint, the name was translated  $\dot{\epsilon}\gamma\dot{\omega}$   $\epsilon\dot{\iota}\mu$ . Apart from this, in John 8:58, when Jesus said "Before

Abraham was, I am" which in the Greek actually reads:  $\pi\rho i\nu A\beta\rho \alpha i\mu \gamma \epsilon \nu \epsilon \sigma \theta \alpha i \epsilon \gamma i\mu \epsilon i\mu \epsilon \eta i\mu$ , he again used the popular  $\epsilon \gamma i\mu$   $\epsilon i\mu \epsilon$ , and was ascribing to himself the name that was revealed to Moses. It was his claim to divinity that made the Jews wanting to stone him to death as reported in the following verse.

# 3.4 Syntactical Issues: Nouns and Pronouns in 2 Timothy 1

In this section, we will examine some syntactical issues in 2 Timothy 1. This is to help you to know how to go about this in the practical sense of it. However, I am not going to exhaust all the issues because you would have to attempt some yourself.

1:1 Παῦλος ἀπόστολος □Χριστοῦ Ἰησοῦ □ διὰ θελήματος θεοῦ κατ' ἐπαγγελίαν ζωῆς τῆς ἐν Χριστῷ Ἰησοῦ 2 Τιμοθέῷ ἀγαπητῷ τέκνῷ· χάρις, ἔλεος, εἰρήνη ἀπὸ θεοῦ πατρὸς καὶ Χριστοῦ Ἰησοῦ τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν.

3 Χάριν ἔχω τῷ θεῷ, ῷ λατρεύω ἀπὸ προγόνων ἐν καθαρῷ συνειδήσει, ὡς ἀδιάλειπτον ἔχω τὴν περὶ σοῦ μνείαν ἐν ταῖς δεήσεσίν μου, νυκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας 4 ἐπιποθῶν σε ἰδεῖν, μεμνημένος σου τῶν δακρύων, ἵνα χαρᾶς πληρωθῶ 5 ὑπόμνησιν □λαβὼν τῆς ἐν σοὶ ἀνυποκρίτου πίστεως, ἥτις ἐνώκησεν πρῶτον ἐν τῆ μάμμῃ σου Λωΐδι καὶ τῆ μητρί σου Εὐνίκῃ, πέπεισμαι δὲ ὅτι καὶ ἐν σοί. 6 δι' ῆν αἰτίαν ἀναμιμνήσκω σε ἀναζωπυρεῖν τὸ χάρισμα τοῦ θεοῦ, ὅ ἐστιν ἐν σοὶ διὰ τῆς ἐπιθέσεως τῶν χειρῶν μου· 7 οὐ γὰρ ἔδωκεν ἡμῖν ὁ θεὸς πνεῦμα δειλίας, ἀλλὰ δυνάμεως καὶ ἀγάπης καὶ σωφρονισμοῦ.

8 Μὴ οὖν ἐπαισχυνθῆς τὸ μαρτύριον τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν μηδὲ ἐμὲ τὸν δέσμιον αὐτοῦ, ἀλλὰ συγκακοπάθησον τῷ εὐαγγελίῳ κατὰ δύναμιν θεοῦ, 9 τοῦ σώσαντος ἡμᾶς καὶ καλέσαντος κλήσει ἀγία, οὐ κατὰ τὰ ἔργα ἡμῶν ἀλλὰ κατὰ ἰδίαν πρόθεσιν καὶ χάριν, τὴν δοθεῖσαν ἡμῖν ἐν Χριστῷ Ἰησοῦ πρὸ χρόνων αἰωνίων, 10 φανερωθεῖσαν δὲ νῦν διὰ τῆς ἐπιφανείας τοῦ σωτῆρος ἡμῶν □Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ□, καταργήσαντος μὲν τὸν θάνατον φωτίσαντος δὲ ζωὴν καὶ ἀφθαρσίαν διὰ τοῦ εὐαγγελίου, 11 εἰς ὃ ἐτέθην ἐγὼ κῆρυξ καὶ ἀπόστολος καὶ □διδάσκαλος. 12 δι' ῆν αἰτίαν καὶ ταῦτα πάσχω, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐπαισχύνομαι, οἶδα γὰρ ῷ πεπίστευκα, καὶ πέπεισμαι ὅτι δυνατός ἐστιν τὴν παραθήκην μου φυλάξαι εἰς ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν. 13 ὑποτύπωσιν ἔχε ὑγιαινόντων λόγων ὦν παρ' ἐμοῦ ἤκουσας ἐν πίστει καὶ ἀγάπῃ τῃ ἐν Χριστῷ Ἰησοῦ· 14 τὴν καλὴν παραθήκην φύλαξον διὰ πνεύματος ἁγίου τοῦ ἐνοικοῦντος ἐν ἡμῖν.

15 Οἶδας τοῦτο ὅτι ἀπεστράφησάν με πάντες οἱ ἐν τῆ Ἀσία, ὧν ἐστιν Φύγελος καὶ Έρμογένης. 16 δώη ἔλεος ὁ κύριος τῷ Ἐνησιφόρου οἴκῷ, ὅτι πολλάκις με ἀνέψυξεν, καὶ τὴν ἅλυσίν μου οὐκ ἐπαισχύνθη· 17 ἀλλὰ γενόμενος ἐν Ῥώμη □σπουδαίως ἐζήτησέν με καὶ εὖρεν— 18 δώη αὐτῷ ὁ κύριος εὑρεῖν ἕλεος παρὰ κυρίου ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῆ ἡμέρα,—καὶ ὅσα ἐν Ἐφέσῷ διηκόνησεν, βέλτιον σὺ γινώσκεις.

# Παῦλος ἀπόστολος 🗆 Χριστοῦ Ἰησοῦ

The above phrase has four words which are all nouns. The first two:  $\Pi \alpha \tilde{\nu} \lambda \alpha \zeta$  $\dot{\alpha} \pi \delta \sigma \tau \delta \lambda \alpha \zeta$  are both in nominative case, thus indicating that there is a relationship between them. The two other words Xpiorov Inovo are both in the genitive case. In translating the first two words, the first word is a name and it means Paul, the second because it does not have an article would be given an indefinite article in translating into English, hence the result would be "Paul, an apostle". The next two words are also proper nouns, but because they are in the genitive case, it would be translated with 'of', hence, you would have 'of Jesus Christ'. If all the four words are put together, it would be translated "Paul, an apostle of Jesus Christ".

## Τιμοθέφ άγαπητῷ τέκνφ

The three words above are all nouns and they are all in the dative case thus indicating they have a relationship. Since the first word is a proper noun, the other nouns that are associated with it would be regarded as adjectives modifying the proper noun. Remember that dative case would need the word 'to' in its translation. Hence, the phrase would be translated "to Timothy beloved child". Though most translation would use 'my beloved child' there is no indication of the pronoun in the Greek text. However, the use of the word beloved by Paul would have implied that the relationship is very affectionate and would demand such a word in translation.

## Χριστοῦ Ἰησοῦ τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν

In the above phrase, the first two words, which have been dealt with earlier has additional three words hence we would examine the relationship of the last three words to the first two you are familiar with. The phrase  $\tau o \tilde{v} \kappa v \rho i o \dot{\eta} \mu \tilde{\omega} v$  consists of one noun accompanied with the definite article and the third word is a second person personal pronoun in the genitive case (which indicates possessive case). Since all the words are in the genitive case, it indicates that they are all related. Literally, the phrase would read 'Christ Jesus the Lord of us' and "Jesus Christ our Lord" in polished English.

## 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit, you have examined the syntactical issues and the implications of such issues to theology and translation especially where nouns and pronouns are involved. You have learnt how to distinguish between the subject and the subject complement where there are two nouns in the nominative case. You have also examined closely the syntactical implications the issue of two nouns in the nominative case has for the translation of John 1:1 and the theological import attending it. You have also examined the role of the genitive in Luke 2:14 and also of the relative pronoun as used by Matthew in the genealogy of Jesus Christ.

## 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points you have learnt in this unit:

- The nominative noun that carries the definite article is taken as the subject. This is what informed the orthodox position in translating John 1:1c as "and the Word was God".
- The ambiguity of Matthew 1:1 in the English language is non- existent in the Greek because Matthew has used a feminine relative pronoun which states clearly that the antecedent to the pronoun is Mary.

The use of the personal pronoun in Greek is to emphasis the subject. The use of  $\dot{\epsilon}\gamma\dot{\omega}$  $\epsilon\dot{\iota}\mu\dot{\iota}$ , by Jesus is an emphasis and there are seven major I am sayings in the Gospel of John.

#### Self-Assessment Exercise

In the passage above, identify the nouns and the pronouns and translate them in relationship to the words surrounding them.

#### 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.

Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.

- Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.
- Wallace, D. B. (1995). Greek Grammar beyond the Basics. Grand Rapids: Zondervan

# UNIT 2: SYNTACTICAL ISSUES IN GREEK VERBS I

## Content

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Syntactical Issues in Tenses
  - 3.2 Syntactical Issues in Voices
  - 3.3 Syntactical Issues in Persons
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References and Further Readings

#### **1.0** Introduction

In the previous unit you have examined the syntactical issues involved in the use of nouns, especially where cases are involved. You have also seen the implications of the use of personal pronouns as in Jesus' use of the  $\dot{\epsilon}\gamma\dot{\omega}$   $\epsilon\dot{\iota}\mu\dot{\iota}$ . In this unit however, we shall be turning our attention to issues involved in Greek verbs. This would be examined by tense, by voice and by persons. Since the verbs are very crucial to the Greek construction, I urge you to painstakingly study all the issues that would be raised here. If possible, get a copy of the Greek New Testament and use it along in this study.

#### 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- Appreciate the role of the tenses in translation and interpretation
- Note how tenses can affect the understanding of biblical passages
- Resolve ambiguities in persons of the verb in consideration of its context
- Discuss how change in voices can alter the meaning of a passage

#### 3.0 Main Content

#### **3.1** Syntactical Issues in Tenses

One of the widely misused passages of the Bible is Matthew 18:18 which reads:

Truly I say to you, whatever you bind on earth shall have been bound in heaven; and whatever you loose on earth shall have been loosed in heaven.

In using this passage, most Christians, especially, those of the neo- Pentecostal block, claim that God has given the Christian the ability and the opportunity to bind and

loose whatever they want, and it shall be as they have decreed. This claim seems to have biblical backing by the way the verse is interpreted in the King James' Version:

Verily I say unto you, whatsoever ye shall bind on earth **shall be bound** in heaven: and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth **shall be loosed** in heaven.

However, a true grammatical and syntactical appreciation of the verse would invalidate such claim. Let us now examine the verse in the Greek New Testament:

ἀμὴν λέγω ὑμῖν, ὅσα □ἐὰν δήσητε ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς ἔσται δεδεμένα □ἐν οὐρανῷ καὶ ὅσα ἐὰν λύσητε ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς ἔσται λελυμένα □ἐν οὐρανῷ.

The words translated "shall be bound in heaven" and "shall be loosed in heaven" are  $\xi \sigma \tau \alpha i \delta \epsilon \delta \epsilon \mu \epsilon \nu \alpha$  and  $\xi \sigma \tau \alpha i \lambda \epsilon \lambda \nu \mu \epsilon \nu \alpha$  respectively. If you remember what you have studied about the perfect tense above, you must immediately identify that the two main verbs that have their stem reduplicated are in the perfect tense and the verb 'to be' working as the auxiliary verb here are in the future form. As you have studied about the perfect tense, it is used to express completed action with a resultant state of being. Consequently, the literal translation of these words should be "will have already been bound in heaven" and "will have already been loosed in heaven" respectively. This actually means that what is willed on earth must have been based on what has already been perfected in heaven. Keener, in Mounce (1993) says thus:

This is the language of the law court. Jewish legal issues were normally decided in Jesus' day by elders in the synagogue community (later by rabbis). Many Jewish people believed that the authority of heaven stood behind the earthly judges when they decided cases based on a correct understanding of God's law. (This process came to be called "binding and loosing.") Jesus' contemporaries often envisioned God's justice in terms of a heavenly court; by obeying God's law, the earthly court simply ratified the decrees of the heavenly court.

Do you now see how the correct understanding of the tense can alter even popularly accepted theological beliefs? Another insightful example could be seen in the use of the aorist tense. You have been taught earlier that the aorist indicates a finished action in the past and could be used in three different ways: constatively (in which the action is looked upon in its entirety); ingressively (in which the action is viewed as having occurred but emphasizes the initiation of the action) and culminatively (in which the action is viewed as having occurred but emphasizes the end of the action or the state of being resulting from the action). Usually, in translation, it is the context that should help you decided which of these three usages is used in a particular passage. Let us take an example from the Jesus discourse on the Mount of Olives as the example here:

Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all these things take place (Matthew 24:34)

Over the generations, interpreting this passage has remained not only enigmatic but also controversial. Its burden also stems from the fact that in Matthew 24:29, Jesus has prophesied that part of the signs that would mark the end of the age would include the darkening of the sun and the refusal of the moon to give its light as well as the

falling of the stars along with the shaking of the powers of heaven. It is important to note that in the Greek text, the tense of the verb used for the fulfilment of the prophecy is in the aorist as you can see below:

ἀμὴν λέγω ὑμῖν ὅτι οὐ μὴ παρέλθῃ ἡ γενεὰ αὕτη ἕως ἂν πάντα ταῦτα γ**ένηται**.

Thus, the only option left to make this statement credible and intelligible is to view the aorist as ingressive, thus putting emphasis on the initiation of the action. If this is true, then the verse would literally be rendered: "Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all these things begin to take place". This usage is also true of Luke 1:20 when the birth of John the Baptist was announced:

And behold, you shall be silent and unable to speak until the day when these things take place, because you did not believe my words, which will be fulfilled in their proper time.

The message given concerning John the Baptist admittedly include not only his birth but also his ministry (see Luke 1:15-17). However, according to the passage, Zechariah began to talk when the name he had written on the tablet was pronounced by the people. Looking at this passage in the Greek text would reveal that that section was couched in the aorist tense:

καὶ ἰδοὺ ἔσῃ σιωπῶν καὶ μὴ δυνάμενος λαλῆσαι ἄχρι ἦς ἡμέρας γένηται ταῦτα, ἀνθ' ὦν οὐκ ἐπίστευσας τοῖς λόγοις μου, οἵτινες πληρωθήσονται εἰς τὸν καιρὸν αὐτῶν.

The aorist tense used here is also  $\gamma \epsilon v \eta \tau \alpha i$  and thus confirms that it is the ingressive aorist that is at play here too.

# 3.2 Syntactical Issues in Voices

It is important for you to note that in the English language, the passive voice is considered a very weak construction (Mounce, 1993). This accounts for the fact even the computer would ask you to reconsider reworking sentences that are expressed in the passive voice oftentimes. However, in the Greek language, it is usually a very clear signal that God is at work. This usage of the passive voice in Jewish tradition is due to the Jewish reticence about speaking directly of God. This could even be seen in Jesus' speech too: We shall look at Matthew 5:4, 6, 7 which reads thus:

Passage	Greek Text	English Translation
Matthew	μακάριοι οἱ πενθοῦντες, ὅτι αὐτοὶ	Blessed are those who mourn, for
5:4	παρακληθήσονται.	they shall be comforted.
Matthew 5:6	χορτασθήσονται.	Blessed are those who hunger and thirst for righteousness, for <b>they</b> shall be satisfied.
Matthew 5:7	μακάριοι οἱ ἐλεήμονες, ὅτι αὐτοὶ ἐλεηθήσονται.	Blessed are the merciful, for they shall receive mercy.

The implication of these statements is that God will comfort them; God will satisfy them and God they will receive mercy from God respectively. This usage called the theological passive is also reflected in Luke 11:9 Kàyà ὑμῖν λέγω, αἰτεῖτε, καὶ δοθήσεται ὑμῖν· ζητεῖτε, καὶ εὑρήσετε· κρούετε, καὶ ἀνοιγήσεται ὑμῖν· which in English reads "So I say to you, ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you." This also implies that it is God that will give what would be received and also open the door that is knocked.

#### **3.3** Syntactical Issues in Persons

A very good illustration of the issue of person in the verb can be taken from the parable of the Good Samaritan (Luke 10:30-37). The verse in contention is the verse that describes the activities of the Samaritan in his bid to help the wounded man. So, for this purpose, I will isolate verses 33 and 34 for examination:

33 Σαμαρίτης δέ τις όδεύων ἦλθεν κατ' αὐτὸν καὶ ἰδὼν ἐσπλαγχνίσθη,
33 καὶ προσελθὼν κατέδησεν τὰ τραύματα αὐτοῦ ἐπιχέων ἕλαιον καὶ οἶνον, ἐπιβιβάσας δὲ αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τὸ ἴδιον κτῆνος ἤγαγεν αὐτὸν εἰς πανδοχεῖον καὶ ἑπεμελήθη αὐτοῦ.

Most translations have rendered the phrase thus: "and he put him on his own beast and brought him to an inn". The problematic word here is the word  $\eta\gamma\alpha\gamma\varepsilon\nu$  which has been rendered "brought him". This word is the third person singular of aorist active indicative from  $\dot{\alpha}\gamma\omega$ , which means "I lead" but can also mean "I brought". Remember also that in the third person, the same word can take "he", "she" or "it". Now because of the context, the feminine gender is already ruled out. The question to ask now is this: what is the antecedent of this pronoun? I will now give the English reading of the verses so that you can follow me closely:

<sup>33</sup> But a Samaritan, who was on a journey, came upon him; and when he saw him, he felt compassion, <sup>34</sup> and came to him and bandaged up his wounds, pouring oil and wine on *them*; and he put him on his own beast, and brought him to an inn and took care of him.

Now, if you follow the story carefully, we have three characters involved here: the wounded man, the Samaritan and the beast (animal). The Samaritan, in his bid to help the wounded man, first applied first aid and then put the wounded man on the beast he was riding. With the introduction of the beast, the pronoun of now has two possible antecedents: the wounded man and the beast. This is one of the verses that have a good degree of ambiguity in the Greek New Testament. Remember that the word  $\check{\alpha}\gamma\omega$  has two possible meanings: I lead, and I bring. It is also important that this context can accept both meanings. If the third person singular of the verb refers to the wounded man, then the translations of the Scriptures is undoubtedly correct, and 'brought' would be the right interpretation. However, if the third person singular of the verb refers to the beast, then lead would have been the right word. Now, listen to the following personal assumptions:

1. Firstly, since the Bible states that the Samaritan placed the wounded man on the beast that he was riding, that is, "his own beast," it implies that he would

have no other beast to mount since we can also assume that the other beasts, if there are any, are carrying the Samaritan's luggage.

2. Secondly, if the Samaritan has no more beasts to ride as he could not have mounted the same beast that a man described as 'half-dead' was, we can also assume that the Samaritan has to lead the beast the wounded man was on to the inn.

I think with this explanation; it becomes clear that the context can allow for both interpretations and thus the context cannot be of help in resolving the ambiguity in this verse.

# 3.4 Verbal Syntactical Issues in 2 Timothy 2: 1-19

As we have done before in the previous unit, I will use the second chapter of 2 Timothy here to raise some syntactical issues and I would expected you to look for more in the passage.

2:1 Σὺ οὖν, τέκνον μου, ἐνδυναμοῦ ἐν τῆ χάριτι τῆ ἐν Χριστῷ Ἰησοῦ, 2 καὶ ἂ ἤκουσας παρ' ἐμοῦ διὰ πολλῶν μαρτύρων, ταῦτα παράθου πιστοῖς ἀνθρώποις, οἵτινες ἱκανοὶ ἔσονται καὶ ἑτέρους διδάξαι. 3 συγκακοπάθησον ὡς καλὸς στρατιώτης Χριστοῦ Ἰησοῦ. 4 οὐδεἰς στρατευόμενος ἐμπλέκεται ταῖς τοῦ βίου πραγματείαις, ἵνα τῷ στρατολογήσαντι ἀρέση· 5 ἐὰν δὲ καὶ ἀθλῆ τις, οὐ στεφανοῦται ἐὰν μὴ νομίμως ἀθλήση· 6 τὸν κοπιῶντα γεωργὸν δεῖ πρῶτον τῶν καρπῶν μεταλαμβάνειν. 7 νόει ὃ λέγω· δώσει γάρ σοι ὁ κύριος σύνεσιν ἐν πᾶσιν.

8 Μνημόνευε Ίησοῦν Χριστὸν ἐγηγερμένον ἐκ νεκρῶν, ἐκ σπέρματος Δαυίδ, κατὰ τὸ εὐαγγέλιόν μου· 9 ἐν ῷ κακοπαθῶ μέχρι δεσμῶν ὡς κακοῦργος. ἀλλὰ ὁ λόγος τοῦ θεοῦ οὐ δέδεται· 10 διὰ τοῦτο πάντα ὑπομένω διὰ τοὺς ἐκλεκτούς, ἵνα καὶ αὐτοὶ σωτηρίας τύχωσιν τῆς ἐν Χριστῷ Ἰησοῦ μετὰ δόξης αἰωνίου. 11 πιστὸς ὁ λόγος· εἰ γὰρ συναπεθάνομεν, καὶ συζήσομεν· 12 εἰ ὑπομένομεν, καὶ συμβασιλεύσομεν· εἰ ἀρνησόμεθα, κἀκεῖνος ἀρνήσεται ἡμᾶς· 13 εἰ ἀπιστοῦμεν, ἐκεῖνος πιστὸς μένει· ἀρνήσασθαι ἑαυτὸν οὐ δύναται.

14 Ταῦτα ὑπομίμνῃσκε, διαμαρτυρόμενος ἐνώπιον τοῦ κυρίου, μὴ λογομαχεῖν, ἐπ' οὐδὲν χρήσιμον, ἐπὶ καταστροφῃ τῶν ἀκουόντων. 15 σπούδασον σεαυτὸν δόκιμον παραστῆσαι τῷ θεῷ, ἐργάτην ἀνεπαίσχυντον, ὀρθοτομοῦντα τὸν λόγον τῆς ἀληθείας. 16 τὰς δὲ βεβήλους κενοφωνίας περιΐστασο· ἐπὶ πλεῖον γὰρ προκόψουσιν ἀσεβείας, 17 καὶ ὁ λόγος αὐτῶν ὡς γάγγραινα νομὴν ἕξει· ὦν ἐστιν Ύμέναιος καὶ Φίλητος, 18 οἵτινες περὶ τὴν ἀλήθειαν ἡστόχησαν, λέγοντες ἀνάστασιν ἤδη γεγονέναι, καὶ ἀνατρέπουσιν τήν τινων πίστιν. 19 ὁ μέντοι στερεὸς θεμέλιος τοῦ θεοῦ ἕστηκεν, ἔχων τὴν σφραγῖδα ταύτην· Ἔγνω κύριος τοὺς ὄντας αὐτοῦ, καί· Ἀποστήτω ἀπὸ ἀδικίας πᾶς ὁ ὀνομάζων τὸ ὄνομα κυρίου.

I will want to concentrate on verse 15 which centres on the biblical picture of a good workman of God and how his activities have been described. We would examine the verbs that have been used and the implications of the verbs. In doing this, the following phrases become important: σπούδασον σεαυτὸν, παραστῆσαι τῷ θεῷ and ὀρθοτομοῦντα τὸν λόγον τῆς ἀληθείας.

#### σπούδασον σεαυτόν

You will want to know the reason for the inclusion of  $\sigma \epsilon \alpha \nu \tau \delta \nu$ , a pronoun, along with a verb. This is because syntactical analysis has to do with the relationship of words and the verb here is used along with the pronoun.  $\sigma \pi \circ \iota \delta \alpha \sigma \circ \nu$  is a first aorist active imperative of the second person singular. The primary meaning of  $\sigma \pi \circ \iota \delta \alpha \sigma \circ \nu$  is "to make haste" and it later developed to "make zealous effort" (Arndt and Gingrich, 1957; Bromiley, 1985). Now, the next thing to determine is how it is used here. You would remember that you have been taught that the imperative can be used cohortatively (to give a positive command); or prohibitively (to give a negative command); or to make an entreaty or permissively. Out of all these uses, the permissive and the prohibitive usages are automatically ruled out because while the third person is what is applicable to the permissive, it is the present imperative that is used for the prohibitive. We are now left with the cohortative and the entreaty usages. By the context, the entreaty is more applicable and because this entreaty is coming from the aorist tense, it means that Paul is instructing every workman of God to begin to make every zealous effort. Remember that the distinction between the present and the aorist tenses in the imperative lies not in the time of action but the kind of action. In the present, the action is continuous and in the aorist the action has to be ingressive, that is it is addressed to an action that has not yet started. The use of the reflexive pronoun emphasizes the fact that it is an activity that has to be done by oneself; no one could do it on behalf of another. The implication of this would come out later.

#### παραστῆσαι τῷ θεῷ

The verb here is followed a noun and its definite article in the dative case. Let us begin the analysis from the verb.  $\pi\alpha\rho\alpha\sigma\tau\eta\sigma\alpha\iota$  is an aorist active infinitive. This is a verbal infinitive derived from  $\pi\alpha\rho\iota\sigma\tau\eta\mu\iota$ . If you pronounce this word very well, it will immediately remind you of one of the verbs of the  $-\mu\iota$  conjugation (( $\tau\tau\eta\mu\iota$ )) which actually mean "I stand". However, by its usage here the word actually means "to present," "to place" and according to (Arndt and Gingrich, 1957) the word could be used in the cultic sense, that is, "the language of sacrifice". Even in the sacrificial language, the word could still read 'present' as the various translations have rendered it. Because of the following noun, which is 'God', then the sacrificial usage must be upheld.

Bringing the two phrases above together, we have the message that the workman of God must make every effort to present himself to God as an approved workman. This understanding reveals the very misunderstanding that pervades the church of God today. Let me share my experience among the students of a particular Bible College in this country with you. Their popular cliché is that "God does not call the qualified, but He qualifies the called". While this statement is true in a pre-call stage, it is not true in a post-call stage. This is because truly God may call those not educationally qualified into the ministry but after the call, the onus rests on the called to make himself approved by God.

#### όρθοτομοῦντα τὸν λόγον τῆς ἀληθείας

This last phrase in the verse completes the thought of the writer. This is made up of one verb, two nouns (one in the accusative case with its definite article and the other in the dative also with its definite article). Let us begin with the verb. The verb  $\dot{o}\rho\theta\sigma\tau\sigma\mu\sigma\bar{u}\nu\tau\alpha$  is from  $\dot{o}\rho\theta\sigma\tau\sigma\mu\dot{e}\omega$  which means "cut a path in a straight direction". This is actually a verbal participle in the form used here. As an active verbal participle, the participle took an object as shown in the words that follow it. These words,  $\tau \dot{o}\nu \lambda \dot{o}\gamma o\nu \tau \eta \zeta \dot{a}\lambda \eta \theta \epsilon i \alpha \zeta$ , would be translated "the word of truth". So, the question is: what does Paul mean by cutting the word in a straight direction? I like Stott's (1973) position that "to cut it straight' or 'make it a straight path' is to be accurate on the one hand and plain on the other in our exposition". He concluded by saying that "he handles the word with such scrupulous care that he both stays on the path himself, keeping to the highway and avoiding the byways, and makes it easy for others to follow" (Stott, 1973).

## 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit you have studied how the various nuances of the tense can affect the understanding and indeed the translation of any passage. As an example, you have seen how the correct rendering of the perfect tense would invalidate the general understanding of Matthew 18:18. You have also seen how the use of the ingressive aorist can throw light on certain predictions like Matthew 24:31. You have also learnt about the use of the passive voice as the theological passive as well as how the use of persons in the verb can be of help in better understanding. We have also explored verse fifteen of 2 Timothy 2 and tried to do an exegesis of the verse with reference to the verbs that are there.

## 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points you have learnt in this unit:

- The claim that we can bind and loose as Christians is limited by the correct rendering of the perfect tense used in the Greek text.
- The verse would be correctly rendered as: Verily I say unto you, whatsoever ye shall bind on earth **will have already been bound** in heaven: and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth **will have already been loosed** in heaven.
- The use of the ingressive aorist would illuminate verses like Matthew 24:34 which would now be properly rendered as: Truly I say to you; this generation will not pass away until all these things began to take place.
- The use of the passive voice allowed the Jews to use the theological passive that gives the Jews the opportunity not to directly mention the name of God.

#### Self-Assessment Exercise

Look at 2 Timothy 2:3-4 above and identify the verbs of your choice and comment on the use of the verb.

#### 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.

- Arndt, W. F. and F. W. Gingrich. (1957). A Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament and Other Early Christian Literature. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.
- Bromiley, G. W. (1985). *Theological Dictionary of the New Testament* (One Volume edition). Grand Rapids: William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company. Mounce, William D. (1993). *Basics of Biblical Greek*, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.
- Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

#### UNIT 3: SYNTACTICAL ISSUES IN GREEK VERBS II

#### Content

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Syntactical Issues in Present Indicative Mood

- 3.2 Syntactical Issues in Subjunctive Mood
- 3.3 Subjunctive Mood Issues: 2 Timothy 2:20-26
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References and Further Readings

## 1.0 Introduction

In the previous unit you have examined the syntactical issues involved in verbs where the tenses, voices and persons are at play. You have seen the Greek necessity of binging out these nuances in translations and interpretation so as to correctly decipher what the author is trying to say. In this unit, we are going to examine syntactical issues involved in the mood the verb is in. two major moods would be considered here as an example, and these are the present indicative mood and the subjunctive mood.

# 2.0 **Objectives**

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- Determine the correct translation of the present indicative in context
- Determine the correct translation of the subjunctive in context
- Explain the discrepancy between the King James' Version translation of 1 John 3:8-9 and that of New American Standard Bible and New International Version.

# 3.0 Main Content

# 3.1 Syntactical Issues in Present Indicative Mood

The present indicative as you have been taught the indicative mood is the mood which confirms the reality of the action from the viewpoint of the speaker. When the indicative mood is in the present tense, the kind of action involved is the present continuous action. When translations are made sometimes, the translators do not take note of these mood and tenses and therefore give translations that do not conform to the mood and the tense. We will examine in this regard the first epistle of John, chapter three verses eight and nine. I will first give you the Greek text and then give you the King James' Version translation before commenting further:

8 ό ποιῶν τὴν ἁμαρτίαν ἐκ τοῦ διαβόλου ἐστίν, ὅτι ἀπ' ἀρχῆς ὁ διάβολος ἁμαρτάνει. εἰς τοῦτο ἐφανερώθη ὁ υἰὸς τοῦ θεοῦ ἵνα λύσῃ τὰ ἔργα τοῦ διαβόλου. 9 πᾶς ὁ γεγεννημένος ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ ἁμαρτίαν οὐ ποιεῖ, ὅτι σπέρμα αὐτοῦ ἐν αὐτῷ μένει, καὶ οὐ δύναται ἁμαρτάνειν, ὅτι ἐκ τοῦ θεοῦ γεγέννηται.

<sup>8</sup> He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose, the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil. <sup>9</sup> Whosoever is born of God **doth not commit sin**; for his seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God. (King James' Version)

The phrases that are important to the understanding of this passage are  $\dot{o} \pi \sigma \tilde{\omega} \tau \eta v$  $\dot{a}\mu \alpha \rho \tau i \alpha v$  and  $\dot{a}\mu \alpha \rho \tau i \alpha v$   $\sigma \sigma \tilde{\omega} \tau$ . These are the phrases that the King James' Version have rendered as "he that committeth sin" and "doth not commit sin". I shall now comment on these phrases.

#### ό ποιῶν τὴν ἁμαρτίαν

Though this phrase is not in the present active indicative, it is important to the understanding of that phrase in the ninth verse because it is its antecedent. This phrase consists of a present active participle and a feminine noun in the accusative case. ò ποιῶν is a present active participle from the word ποιεῖ, a contract verb. You would remember that participles have both the quality of a verb and a noun because participles are verbal adjectives. As a noun, the word is a nominative masculine singular. By usage, it is used here as an adjective. Thus, we can identify that it is used substantively, that is, as a noun. This is why it is translated as "He who commits". However, this translation did not bring out its present continuous quality. To do this, the translation would be, "He who keeps on committing". Because this participle has been used substantively, to complete the sense of the statement another noun is needed to serve as the direct object because the verbal aspect has not been overlooked. This is the function of  $\tau \eta v$  auaptíav in this phrase. Thus, putting the words together, the translation would be "He who keeps on committing sin". This translation does negate the idea of the King James' Version that read as if even to commit one sin makes one a child of the devil. The translation of the King James Version treated the kind of action as a punctiliar action which is more fitting for the aorist indicative and not the present indicative. After treating the second phrase, we will examine other translations.

## ἁμαρτίαν οὐ ποιεῖ

This is the focal phrase and it deserves serious attention. It is the use of this phrase that makes verse nine a parallelism of verse eight. The first word here is  $\dot{\alpha}\mu\alpha\rho\tau$  a singular masculine noun in the accusative. The second word is où, which is a negative particle. The function of this particle is to serve as a negation of the following main verb. The verb here is  $\pi \sigma \iota \tilde{\iota}$  and it is a present active indicative verb in the third person singular. Thus, as a present singular indicative, it would be translated "he is committing". So, if all the words are put together, it would read "he is not committing sin" or to put it in the continuous sense, it will better read "he does not keep on committing sin".

Now, let us examine two other translations:

<sup>8</sup> The one who practices sin is of the devil; for the devil has sinned from the beginning. The Son of God appeared for this purpose, to destroy the works of the devil. <sup>9</sup> No one who is born of God practices sin, because His seed abides in him; and he cannot sin, because he is born of God (New American Standard Bible)

<sup>8</sup> He who does what is sinful is of the devil, because the devil has been sinning from the beginning. The reason the Son of God appeared was to destroy the devil's work. <sup>9</sup> No one who is born of God will continue to sin, because God's

seed remains in him; he cannot go on sinning, because he has been born of God (New International Version)

If you examine the New American Standard Bible translation you would discover that the translation brought out the present continuous tense in all the aspects of the translation both in verses eight and nine. In verse eight, it reads "the one who practices sin" and in verse nine it reads "no one who is born of God practices sin". In the New International Version, though the phrase in verse eight did not bring out the present continuous action but tends toward the punctiliar; however, in verse nine it brings it out by using "will continue to sin". Note that it is the King James' Version translation that most theologians canvassing for sinless perfection hang upon for their argument.

## 3.2 Syntactical Issues in Subjunctive Mood

For this section on the subjunctive mood, I am indebted to Buist Fanning as quoted by Mounce (1993). Apart from listening to the contents of the speech of a respected leader, we look also for the attitude. It is in this attitude that we can determine the implications of his words concerning the relationship we have with the speaker and the issues that are significant to the speaker and would be emphasized by at least body language. These elements are also discernible as we study the New Testament.

The subjunctive mood is one mood that has been used fascinatingly in the Greek language. In this sub-section we are going to examine the use of the subjunctive mood to express emphasis. One the most important usages to theology is the double negative. The subjunctive mood can make use of the indicative negative particle uo0 and the subjunctive particle  $\mu\eta$  along with a subjunctive verb to indicate a strong negation about the future. The subjunctive mood is used characteristically to suggest a future possibility but in the same phrase, the possibility of the occurrence of the is emphatically denied. It has been said that this linguistic combination occurs some eighty-five times in the New Testament. For our example of this usage, we would examine Jesus' discourse in John 10:27-28. The Greek text would be quoted first followed by the English translation:

**27** τὰ πρόβατα τὰ ἐμὰ τῆς φωνῆς μου ἀκούουσιν, κἀγὼ γινώσκω αὐτά, καὶ ἀκολουθοῦσίν μοι, **28** κἀγὼ δίδωμι αὐτοῖς ζωὴν αἰώνιον, **καὶ οὐ μὴ** ἀπόλωνται εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα, καὶ οὐχ ἀρπάσει τις αὐτὰ ἐκ τῆς χειρός μου. <sup>27</sup> "My sheep hear My voice, and I know them, and they follow Me; <sup>28</sup> and I give eternal life to them, **and they will never perish**; and no one will snatch them out of My hand.

#### καὶ οὐ μὴ ἀπόλωνται εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα

The above is the phrase used by Jesus. The use of  $\kappa\alpha$  is that of an ordinary conjunction to connect the thoughts from the previous phrase to this one. This is followed by où  $\mu$  $\eta$  which are the double negatives. As have been said earlier, this is the combination of où which is the present active indicate negative particle and  $\mu$  $\eta$  which is the subjunctive negative particle.

The two double negatives are followed by  $\dot{\alpha}\pi \dot{\alpha}\lambda\omega\nu\tau\alpha_i$ , a third person plural aorist middle verb in the subjunctive mood. The verb has its root in  $\dot{\alpha}\pi \dot{\alpha}\lambda\lambda\nu\mu_i$  which means

'destroy' in the active voice and 'perish' in the middle voice. Thus, the phrase would be translated "and they would not perish". The last three words  $\varepsilon_{i\zeta} \tau \delta v \alpha i \tilde{\omega} v \alpha$ , are actually to be treated like one. This is because Summers (1950) has confirmed that " $\varepsilon_{i\zeta} \tau \delta v \alpha i \tilde{\omega} v \alpha$  is an idiom meaning forever". Literally, the three words can be translated "into the ages". If all the words are put together, the idea is that "they would never ever perish". Mounce (1993) also said that the subjunctive combination strongly denies even the possibility that any of Jesus' sheep would perish: "they will certainly not perish," "they will by no means perish". He also concluded that the phrase,  $\varepsilon_{i\zeta} \tau \delta v$  $\alpha i \tilde{\omega} v \alpha$ , reinforced the idea.

#### 3.3 Subjunctive Mood Issues: 2 Timothy 2:20-26

20 Έν μεγάλη δὲ οἰκία οὐκ ἔστιν μόνον σκεύη χρυσᾶ καὶ ἀργυρᾶ ἀλλὰ καὶ ξύλινα καὶ ὀστράκινα, καὶ ἃ μὲν εἰς τιμὴν ἃ δὲ εἰς ἀτιμίαν· 21 ἐἀν οὖν τις ἐκκαθάρῃ ἑαυτὸν ἀπὸ τούτων, ἔσται σκεῦος εἰς τιμήν, ἡγιασμένον, □εὕχρηστον τῷ δεσπότῃ, εἰς πῶν ἔργον ἀγαθὸν ἡτοιμασμένον. 22 τὰς δὲ νεωτερικὰς ἐπιθυμίας φεῦγε, δίωκε δὲ δικαιοσύνην, πίστιν, ἀγάπην, εἰρήνην μετὰ τῶν ἐπικαλουμένων τὸν κύριον ἐκ καθαρᾶς καρδίας. 23 τὰς δὲ μωρὰς καὶ ἀπαιδεύτους ζητήσεις παραιτοῦ, εἰδὼς ὅτι γεννῶσι μάχας· 24 δοῦλον δὲ κυρίου οὐ δεῖ μάχεσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἤπιον εἶναι πρὸς πάντας, διδακτικόν, ἀνεξίκακον, 25 ἐν πραΰτητι παιδεύοντα τοὺς ἀντιδιατιθεμένους, μήποτε □δώῃ αὐτοῖς ὁ θεὸς μετάνοιαν εἰς ἐπίγνωσιν ἀληθείας, 26 καὶ ἀνανήψωσιν ἐκ τῆς τοῦ διαβόλου παγίδος, ἐζωγρημένοι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸ ἐκείνου θέλημα.

In the above passage, the subjunctive mood is used only in three verses: 21, 25 and 26 and the phrases where they have been used have been bolded. We will now consider the phrases:

## έὰν οὖν τις ἐκκαθάρῃ ἑαυτὸν ἀπὸ τούτων

The occurrence of the subjunctive here is plainly the use of the subjunctive to make a conditional sentence. As you have been taught, when the subjunctive is used in this manner, the protasis, that is the 'if' clause would make use of eav. Thus, the phrase we are dealing with is the protasis in the verse. The second word in the phrase, ov, which means 'therefore' is usually placed first in the English translation as in the New International Version, though some English translations omit it. We cannot however overlook it as it serves as the linker word with the preceding verses. It is its function as a linker word that suggests its being in the first position in the New International Version translation. The next word is  $\tau_{1\zeta}$ . This is the indefinite nominative masculine singular pronoun. Because it is indefinite, and because it is in the nominative, it would be translated 'anyone' and it becomes the subject of the sentence. The next word, έκκαθάρη, is the main verb that is placed in the subjunctive. It is actually the third person singular of the aorist subjunctive and it is from the root word  $\dot{\epsilon}\kappa\kappa\alpha\theta\alpha\dot{\rho}\omega$  and it means cleanse. It is also followed by the noun in the accusative case, thus becoming the direct object of the sentence. This is actually in line with the grammar rules that whenever  $\dot{\epsilon}\kappa\kappa\alpha\theta\alpha\rho\omega$  is used, it is followed by an object in the accusative case. It is also important to note that the direct object is immediately followed by an indirect object in the genitive. The genitive is occasioned by the coming of  $d\pi \delta$  which is

usually used along with the genitive to express separation. The preposition is followed by the genitive neuter plural demonstrative pronoun 'these,' hence the phrase would read 'from these things'. If all the words of the phrase are put together what we would have would then read "therefore, if anyone cleanses himself from these things". Note that the demonstrative pronoun which should have an antecedent, would make us remember that the 'therefore' is a linker phrase to an earlier argument. The idea is that if anyone would cleanse himself from the defilement that would have come from false teachers who have denied the fundamental truth of the gospel and then from the wickedness of our hearts and lives (Stott, 1973).

#### μήποτε δώη αὐτοῖς ὁ θεὸς μετάνοιαν

This second phrase comes from verse twenty-five. The phrase opens with the word  $\mu\eta\pi\sigma\tau\epsilon$ . This word is a combination of  $\mu\eta$  (the subjunctive negative particle meaning 'not', and  $\pi\sigma\tau\epsilon$  which means 'at some time'. This word is used predominantly in three ways:

- 1. It is used with the indicative to reinforce negative time, such as 'at no time'. This is not the case here since it is followed in this verse by the subjunctive.
- 2. It could also be used as a prohibitory conjunction. In this case, it could be used after verbs of fearing and warning and so would be translated 'lest' or, 'for fear that'. It could also be used as an expression of anxiety about the future in negative purpose clauses. In this case, it could also be translated 'lest'.
- 3. Finally, it could be used as an interrogative particle expressing a measure of doubt or uncertainty. In this case, it would be translated 'whether' and 'perhaps'.

In the phrase above, it is used as an expression of anxiety about the future in negative purpose clauses. This usage is expressed variously by the translations: KJV used peradventure; NAB used 'it may be that'; NIV used 'in the hope that'; RSV used 'perhaps', and New American Standard Bible used 'if perhaps'.

This word is immediately followed by the subjunctive verb  $\delta \omega \eta$ . This is the third person singular first aorist active subjunctive. The root for this word is  $\delta \delta \omega \mu \eta$ , one of the  $-\mu \eta$  conjugation verbs and the meaning is: 'give', 'grant' and 'permit'. The usage here is 'give,' but with reference to God, it will connote 'grant', 'bestow' and 'impart'. This fact is substantiated by the fact that the phrase has  $\delta \Theta \epsilon \delta \varsigma$  as the noun in the nominative, hence God is its subject and He is the one that is doing the giving, hence grant or bestow will be the most appropriate word here. The indirect object is  $\alpha \delta \tau \delta \varsigma$  and it is the personal pronoun which is in the dative case. It is also in the masculine gender and it is plural in number. The last word is  $\mu \epsilon \tau \delta \tau \delta \sigma \sigma \delta \tau$  is the direct object of the phrase. Putting all these together, the phrase would read "perhaps God will grant them repentance".

#### καὶ ἀνανήψωσιν

This phrase is the last phrase where the subjunctive is used. The phrase began with  $\kappa \alpha i$ , which is a coordinating conjunction, meaning 'and'. This also implies that verse twenty-six is a continuation of the thought of verse twenty-five. The next word

ἀνανήψωσιν, is the main verb of the phrase. This verb is the first aorist subjunctive active and is in the third person plural. The root word is ἀνανήφω. This is a very enigmatic word. Arndt and Gingrich (1957), implies that at the time of Aristotle, the word means 'become sober' and it is usually used in the spiritual sense, especially the ethical realm in the post-classical times. It later came to mean come to one's senses. Most translations adopt 'come to one's senses' as the meaning. The meaning of the phrase thus would be "and they come to their senses".

## 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit you have been taught that the present indicative mood has the present continuous tense as its kind of action. You have seen the example of this usage in 1 John 3:8-9. You have seen that most translations use the punctiliar action thereby changing the thought of the original author. You have also seen that the subjunctive mood is used to express emphasis. In this unit, you have seen how the subjunctive makes use of the double negative to indicate a strong negation about the future. This occurrence comes up about eighty-five times in the New Testament. The example used here is John 10:27-28. After this, the use of the subjunctive was considered in 2 Timothy 2:20-26 where it is used mainly for constructing conditional sentences.

## 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points you have learnt in this unit:

- The present indicative mood uses the present continuous tense to indicate its kind of action.
- The use of the punctiliar action to translate 1 John 3:8-9 have led to a change of the thought of the original author.
- The subjunctive mood is used to express emphasis.
- The subjunctive makes use of the double negative to indicate a strong negation about the future.
- This occurrence comes up about eighty-five times in the New Testament.

## Self-Assessment Exercise

Study the passage below and locate the verses therein and analyze them:

10 Τοῦ λοιποῦ ἐνδυναμοῦσθε ἐν κυρίφ καὶ ἐν τῷ κράτει τῆς ἰσχύος αὐτοῦ. 11 ἐνδύσασθε τὴν πανοπλίαν τοῦ θεοῦ πρὸς τὸ δύνασθαι ὑμᾶς στῆναι πρὸς τὰς μεθοδείας τοῦ διαβόλου· 12 ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν ἡμῖν ἡ πάλη πρὸς αἶμα καὶ σάρκα, ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὰς ἀρχάς, πρὸς τὰς ἐξουσίας, πρὸς τοὺς κοσμοκράτορας τοῦ σκότους τούτου, πρὸς τὰ πνευματικὰ τῆς πονηρίας ἐν τοῖς ἐπουρανίοις. 13 διὰ τοῦτο ἀναλάβετε τὴν πανοπλίαν τοῦ θεοῦ, ἵνα δυνηθῆτε ἀντιστῆναι ἐν τῆ ἡμέρα τῆ πονηρᾶ καὶ ἅπαντα κατεργασάμενοι στῆναι. 14 στῆτε οὖν περιζωσάμενοι τὴν ὀσφὺν ὑμῶν ἐν ἀληθεία, καὶ ἐνδυσάμενοι τὸν θώρακα τῆς δικαιοσύνης, 15 καὶ ὑποδησάμενοι τοὺς πόδας ἐν ἑτοιμασία τοῦ εὐαγγελίου τῆς εἰρήνης, 16 ἐν πᾶσιν ἀναλαβόντες τὸν θυρεὸν τῆς πίστεως, ἐν ῷ δυνήσεσθε πάντα τὰ βέλη τοῦ πονηροῦ πεπυρωμένα σβέσαι· 17 καὶ τὴν περικεφαλαίαν τοῦ σωτηρίου δέξασθε, καὶ τὴν μάχαιραν τοῦ πνεύματος, ὅ ἐστιν ἡῆμα

πνεύματι, καὶ εἰς αὐτὸ ἀγρυπνοῦντες ἐν πάσῃ προσκαρτερήσει καὶ δεήσει περὶ πάντων τῶν ἁγίων

#### 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.
- Arndt, W. F. and F. W. Gingrich. (1957). A Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament and Other Early Christian Literature. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.
- Bromiley, G. W. (1985). *Theological Dictionary of the New Testament* (One Volume edition). Grand Rapids: William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company.
- Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.
- Stott, J. R. W. (1973). *The Message of 2 Timothy: Guard the Gospel*. Leicester: Inter Varsity Press.
- Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

# UNIT 4: SYNTACTICAL ISSUES: ADJECTIVES AND IMPERFECT Tense

#### Content

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Syntactical Issues in Adjectives
  - 3.2 Syntactical Issues in Imperfect Indicative
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References and Further Readings

## **1.0 Introduction**

In the previous unit you have examined the syntactical issues involved in especially in the practical usages of the subjunctive mood as well as the present continuous of the indicative. We have explored some passages of the Bible to explain the roles of these moods in interpretation and how the failure to observe them can lead to grievous misinterpretations. In this unit, we still will examine some syntactical issues in the adjectives and also in the imperfect indicative. This new understanding would make us to re- examine our previous understanding of some biblical passages.

#### 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- Explain the use of the adjective in Greek
- Interpret Matthew 6:13 correctly
- Discuss the use of the imperfect in Luke 15

## 3.0 Main Content

## 3.1 Syntactical Issues in Adjectives

Wallace (1995) reiterates the importance of the adjective in the Greek language. He has this to say:

Adjectives have a theological importance that is hard to rival. They can modify a noun (attributive use), assert something about the noun (predicative use) or stand in the place of a noun (substantive use). Sometimes it is difficult to tell exactly which role a particular adjective is in. Let us examine the theological role the adjective plays in Matthew 6:13.

καὶ μὴ εἰσενέγκῃς ἡμᾶς εἰς πειρασμόν, ἀλλὰ ῥῦσαι ἡμᾶς ἀπὸ τοῦ □πονηροῦ.

Before making any comment on this verse, let us look at some translations:

And lead us not into temptation, **but deliver us from evil**: (KJV)

And do not subject us to the final test, **but deliver us from the evil one** (NAB)

And do not lead us into temptation, **but deliver us from evil** (NASB)

And lead us not into temptation, **but deliver us from evil** (RSV)

From the translation of the four versions above, you would have observed that the translation of the adjectival phrase dangles between two options: either they use 'evil' or 'the evil one'. If the translators would be true to the Greek text, the presence of the definite article before the adjective would definitely suggest a substantive usage. You may wonder that the definite article does not have either the nominative or the accusative case. But you would also remember that it cannot be in the nominative case because it is not the subject of the phrase and the use of the preposition  $\dot{\alpha}\pi\dot{0}$ , would demand the use of the genitive case instead of the more appropriate accusative case. The substantive use of the adjective would now make 'the evil one' the correct interpretation of the adjective.

Let us now compare the implication of the different translations. This text is not teaching that God will make our lives a garden of rose as some neo-Pentecostal preachers would want us to believe; however, God would deliver us from the devil himself. The truth is that in this world we encounter dangers, disasters and partake in the ugliness of this world. it amazes me when I hear people preach that Christians are not supposed to be sick or neither would anything bad happen to them. Frustratingly, when these happen instead of accepting the fault in our theologies, we blame the victims instead by making them feel that evil has happened to them because of their sin.

## **3.2** Syntactical Issues in Imperfect Indicative

You would recall that in our study of the imperfect, you have been told that though the imperfect indicates continuous action in the past time, it is used in three major ways:

- 1. The descriptive imperfect: in this usage, the imperfect is used to give a vivid representation of what was going on in the past.
- 2. The iterative imperfect: in this usage, the imperfect is used to show repeated action in the past.
- 3. The inceptive imperfect: in this usage, the imperfect is used to emphasize the beginning of a continuous action in the past time.

With this at the back of your mind, let us examine Luke 15:1-3:

15:1 <sup>\*</sup>Ησαν δὲ □αὐτῷ ἐγγίζοντες □ πάντες οἱ τελῶναι καὶ οἱ ἁμαρτωλοὶ ἀκούειν αὐτοῦ. 2 καὶ διεγόγγυζον οἴ □τε Φαρισαῖοι καὶ οἱ γραμματεῖς λέγοντες ὅτι Οὖτος ἁμαρτωλοὺς προσδέχεται καὶ συνεσθίει αὐτοῖς. 3 εἶπεν δὲ πρὸς αὐτοὺς τὴν παραβολὴν ταύτην λέγων.

These three verses form the context that Luke gave to the discourse of Luke 15. However, the most important phrase to our discussion of the imperfect is the bolded one. The phrase started with  $\tilde{\eta}\sigma\alpha\nu$  which is the imperfect form of  $\epsilon i\mu t$ . This is used alongside a present participle ( $\dot{\epsilon}\gamma\gamma i\zeta ov\tau\epsilon\zeta$ ). This construction is used to form what is called the 'periphrastic imperfect'. The periphrastic imperfect is used to depict the general circumstances of Jesus' ministry rather than one singular occurrence. This is the use of the imperfect to depict a habit, that is, the re-occurrence of an action (Adewale, 1996).

Now, let us examine how some translations have expressed this phrase:

Then drew near unto him all the publicans and sinners for to hear him (KJV)

The tax collectors and sinners were all drawing near to listen to him (NAB)

Now all the tax collectors and the sinners **were coming near Him** to listen to Him (NAU)

Now the tax collectors and sinners were all drawing near to hear him (RSV)

As you would have noticed, only the King James' Version used the punctiliar action in its translation of the periphrastic imperfect. The other versions tried to picture the on-going past action though it did not bring out the force of the periphrastic imperfect clearly. The idea here is that the tax-collectors and the sinners kept coming near to Jesus to hear Him.

The second imperfect that is used in the above passage is  $\delta\iota\epsilon\gamma\delta\gamma\gamma\upsilon\zeta\sigma\nu$  and it is used with reference to the scribes and the Pharisees.  $\delta\iota\epsilon\gamma\delta\gamma\gamma\upsilon\zeta\sigma\nu$  is a very rare word in Greek language. This is because it is used only this once in the New Testament and among Greek writers it is used only by Heliodorus to mean "to whisper". It is a compound verb formed by the combination of the preposition  $\delta \omega$  and  $\gamma o\gamma\gamma \acute{\upsilon}\zeta \omega$  and it means murmuring.

The force of the  $\delta \omega$  here suggests that the scribes and the Pharisees were actually grumbling among themselves, that is, it wasn't made open. Adewale, (1996) has this to say on the verb here:

Since the verb is also in the imperfect, it also implies a continuous action. One cannot but note the use of the imperfect in depicting the action of Pharisees and the scribes and that of the tax-collectors and the sinners. This usage may not be accidental but to depict the fact that as the tax- collectors and the sinners were drawing near to Jesus, in that proportion, the Pharisees and the scribes increased their murmuring.

This implies that the use of the imperfect in this verse balances the use of the periphrastic imperfect in verse one, and so habit is also implied here.

## 4.0 Conclusion

In this unit you have seen practically how the usage of adjectives can affect translation. You have learnt that adjectives have a theological importance that is hard to rival. You have also been reminded that they can be used attributively, predicatively or substantively. You have also been told that it is sometimes difficult to pinpoint the exact usage of an adjective. As an example, Matthew 6:13 was examined and we discover that the inability of the translators of the King James' Version to see the substantive role of the adjective led to the translation: "deliver us from evil" instead of "deliver us from the evil one". You have also gone further to examine the use of the imperfect indicative. The iterative use of the imperfect to depict a habit (that is, periphrastic imperfect) was seen in the first two verses.

#### 5.0 Summary

The following are the major point you have learnt in this unit:

- Adjectives have a theological importance that is hard to rival.
- Adjectives can be used attributively, predicatively or substantively.
- It is sometimes difficult to pinpoint the exact usage of an adjective.
- The inability of the translators of the King James' Version to see the substantive role of the adjective led to the translation: "deliever us from evil" instead of "deliever us from the evil one".
- The imperfect can be used descriptively, iteratively and inceptively.
- The iterative use of the imperfect is sometimes to depict a habit (that is, periphrastic imperfect) as seen in Luke 15:1-2.

## Self-Assessment Exercise

Identify all the adjectives in this passage, indicating the functions they perform:

1 Corinthians 7:1 Περί δὲ ὦν □ἐγράψατε, καλὸν ἀνθρώπῷ γυναικὸς μὴ ἅπτεσθαι·

1 Corinthians 7:2 διὰ δὲ τὰς πορνείας ἕκαστος τὴν ἑαυτοῦ γυναῖκα ἐχέτω, καὶ ἑκάστη τὸν ἴδιον ἄνδρα ἐχέτω.

1 Corinthians 7:3 τῆ γυναικὶ ὁ ἀνὴρ τὴν □ὀφειλὴν ἀποδιδότω, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ἡ γυνὴ τῷ ἀνδρί.

**1 Corinthians 7:4** ή γυνή τοῦ ἰδίου σώματος οὐκ ἐξουσιάζει ἀλλὰ ὁ ἀνήρ· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ ὁ ἀνήρ τοῦ ἰδίου σώματος οὐκ ἐξουσιάζει ἀλλὰ ἡ γυνή.

1 Corinthians 7:5 μὴ ἀποστερεῖτε ἀλλήλους, εἰ μήτι ἂν ἐκ συμφώνου πρὸς καιρὸν ἵνα □σχολάσητε □τῆ προσευχῆ καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ αὐτὸ □ἦτε, ἵνα μὴ πειράζῃ ὑμᾶς ὁ Σατανᾶς διὰ τὴν ἀκρασίαν ὑμῶν.

## 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2004). A Yoruba reading of the parable of the prodigal son. *African Journal of Biblical Studies*, 20 (1), Ibadan: National Association for Biblical Studies, 29-42.
- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.
- Arndt, W. F. and F. W. Gingrich. (1957). A Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament and Other Early Christian Literature. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.
- Bromiley, G. W. (1985). *Theological Dictionary of the New Testament* (One Volume edition). Grand Rapids: William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company.
- Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.
- Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.

## UNIT 5: SYNTACTICAL ISSUES IN PARTICIPLES

## Content

- 1.0 Introduction
- 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes
- 3.0 Main Content
  - 3.1 Participles and Greek Syntax
  - 3.2 The Nature of the Participle
  - 3.3 Identifying the Use of Adjectives
  - 3.4 Examples of Various Usages of Participles
- 4.0 Conclusion
- 5.0 Summary
- 6.0 References and Further Readings

## 1.0 Introduction

In the previous unit you have examined the syntactical issues involved in adjectives and you have seen how the misidentification of the function of an adjective can lead to misinterpretation and consequently, a wrong theology. You have also seen the iterative function of the imperfect in depicting a habit. In this unit, we would be focusing in the participle which is also another important part of speech as long as Greek Grammar is concerned.

## 2.0 Intended Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit you should be able to:

- Indicate the functions of the participle
- Identify the time of action in the participle
- Indicate the kind of action in the participle
- List the verbal qualities of the participle
- List the adjectival qualities of the participle
- Correctly interpret an adjective

#### 3.0 Main Content

#### 3.1 Participles and Greek Syntax

The importance of participles to Greek syntax cannot be overemphasized. Pointing this out, Wallace (1995) says that the "mastery of the syntax of participles is mastery of Greek syntax." The difficulty in mastering the syntax of participles is due to the following:

- 1. Usage-the participle can be used as a noun, adjective, adverb, or verb and in any mood, that is it can be the indicative or the imperative or the subjunctive.
- 2. Word order-the participle is often thrown to the end of the sentence or elsewhere to an equally inconvenient location.
- 3. Locating the main verb-sometimes it is verses away; sometimes it is only implied; and sometimes it is not even implied!

In short, the participle is difficult to master because it is so versatile. But this very versatility makes it capable of a rich variety of nuances, as well as a rich variety of abuses (Wallace, 1995). As a result of the following, the role the context has to play in the interpretation of the syntax cannot the ruled out. This is to say that the structure, that is, the presence or the absence of the article may not be of help in determining the kind of the participle. In order to have a graphic understanding of this situation, we will quickly revise the nature of the participles and expound more on vital areas.

# **3.2** The Nature of the Participles

If you would recall the earlier lessons on the nature of the participles, we have said that they are verbal adjectives. They are so called because they have the attributes of both the verb and the adjective. The adjectival nature of the participle comes out mostly when it is used either substantively or adjectivally.

As verbs, they have tense and voice and as adjectives they have gender, number and case. It has to be noted that the tenses in the participles are just like what they are in the indicative mood except that the point of reference is the main verb of the sentence and not the speaker. In other words, in the participles, time is relative while they are absolute in the indicative. Let me explain this in detail: for the aorist and perfect participle the time is antecedent to the main verb, however, if the main verb is also in the aorist, the time of the participle may be contemporaneous. The present participle has the time of action as contemporaneous with the main verb while the future verb uses the subsequent time.

# **3.3** Identifying the Use of Participles

If a participle is used as an adjective, it can either modify a substantive, that is, used attributively or assert something about the substantive, that is, used predicatively. If the participle carries an adjective, then it modifies a noun but when it carries no article it may be predicative. Thus, in interpreting a participle, you would first determine if it is attributive or predicative. The attributive participle as is usually translated as a relative clause. A very good example here is Matthew 6:4 where the participle reads:  $\dot{o} \pi \alpha \tau \eta \rho \sigma \sigma v \dot{o} \beta \lambda \epsilon \pi \omega v$  which means "your father who sees". When the participle is used substantively, it takes the place of the noun and can function in basically all the place a noun can function.

## **3.4** Examples of Various Usages of Participles

We will look into the book of Acts 19:2 for the use of the adverbial participle that is there and also look at the problem of interpretation that it has created.

εἶπέν □τε πρὸς αὐτούς· Εἰ πνεῦμα ἅγιον ἐλάβετε πιστεύσαντες; οἱ □δὲ πρὸς αὐτόν· Ἀλλ' οὐδ' εἰ πνεῦμα ἅγιον ἔστιν ἠκούσαμεν.

The importance of the participle here is that its meaning is the determinant of the meaning of Paul's question. The participle here is  $\pi_{10}\tau_{10}$  which is an aorist active verbal participle in the nominative masculine plural form. The root word for the participle is  $\pi_{10}\tau_{10}$  which means I believe. Now, let us go into the semantics of its meaning.

As you have been told earlier, the common use of time in the aorist participle is to indicate that the action occurs before the action of the main verb. This is the position of the King James Version and this is why the verse is translated as follows:

He said unto them, have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed? And they said unto him, we have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Ghost (KJV)

This interpretation from the King James' Version has been the focal point of the neo-Pentecostal movement's theology that the baptism of the Holy Spirit is a different experience that is distinct from and follows the salvation experience.

It is however a known fact that the aorist participle that is contemporaneous with the action of the main verb, especially, if the aorist verb is a finite verb as is the case here. This is the position of most protestant churches and this is also the understanding of the Revised Standard Version translation:

And he said to them, "Did you receive the Holy Spirit when you believed?" And they said, "No, we have never even heard that there is a Holy Spirit." (RSV)

In this interpretation, you would see that the believing and the receiving of the Holy Spirit are expected to have occurred at the same time. The position of the Revised Standard Version is followed by the New International Version, the New American Version and the New American Standard Bible. You need to take note that this is one of the many occurrences of ambiguity in the Greek language that may never be resolved because the context, which should have helped clarify the correct reading can accept both readings. Thus, people are left with their theological leaning as the determinant factor for interpretation in this case.

Another passage worth examining is Romans 1: 3-4. The Greek text reads:

**3** περὶ τοῦ υἰοῦ αὐτοῦ, **τοῦ γενομένου** ἐκ σπέρματος Δαυὶδ κατὰ σάρκα, **4 τοῦ ὑρισθέντος** υἰοῦ θεοῦ ἐν δυνάμει κατὰ πνεῦμα ἁγιωσύνης ἐξ ἀναστάσεως νεκρῶν, Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν,

In the above passage,  $\tau \circ \tilde{\upsilon} \gamma \epsilon v \circ \mu \epsilon v \circ \upsilon$  and  $\tau \circ \tilde{\upsilon} \circ \rho \circ \sigma \theta \epsilon v \tau \circ \varsigma$  are attribute participles. This is clear because the two participles carry the definite article. Apart from this, the two participles have the word  $\upsilon \circ \tilde{\upsilon}$  at the beginning of verse three as their substantive, that is, the noun they are modifying. Let us now analyse the usage of these participles.

#### τοῦ γενομένου

As we have indicated above,  $\tau \circ \tilde{v} \gamma \epsilon v \circ \mu \epsilon' v \circ v$ , is modifying  $\tau \circ \tilde{v} \circ i \circ \tilde{v}$  and this is the reason for its appearance in the genitive case; its substantive is also in the genitive case.  $\tau \circ \tilde{v} \gamma \epsilon v \circ \mu \epsilon' v \circ v$  is a verbal participle of the aorist middle genitive. In its adjectival quality it is the masculine singular. The root word is  $\gamma i v \circ \mu \alpha i$  which means become, or be, or happen, or take place. Taking the following words into consideration, it tells us that the Son was a descendant (the correct meaning of  $\gamma i v \circ \mu \alpha i$  here) according to the flesh. It is important for you to note that the word 'flesh' here do not carry any

negative connotation (such as the use of flesh to mean sin) but just the physical or human genealogy. However, theologically, it does imply the fulfillment of the Old Testament prophecies that the Messiah would belong to the Davidic line.

## τοῦ ὑρισθέντος

As a participle,  $\tau \circ \tilde{v} \circ \rho \circ \sigma \theta \in \tau \circ \varsigma$  is modifying  $\tau \circ \tilde{v} \circ \tilde{v} \circ \tilde{v} \circ \tilde{v}$  of verse three as had been said earlier. The root word is  $\delta \rho (\zeta \omega$  and it means, "decide," "determine," "appoint," and "designate". This participle is a verbal participle of the aorist passive. In its adjectival quality, it is the genitive masculine singular participle. It is important for you to note here that it is the passive voice, because the Son did not make himself what he is, but by the Spirit, he was designated the Son of God.

There is no doubt that the title "Son of God" as used here is indicative of Jesus' messianic office. If this is pieced together, the idea now is that the Son of God that is mentioned in verse three of belonging to the house of David according to human descent is also the same one that is appointed or designated the Son of God according to the Spirit. This is confirmed by Schreiner, as quoted in Mounce (1993):

The two stages of salvation history are present here. During his earthly life Jesus was the Messiah and the Son of David, but upon his resurrection he was appointed as the ruling and the reigning Messiah. The title "Son of God" in verse 4, then, refers to the messianic kingship of Jesus, not his deity. Paul is not suggesting that Jesus was adopted as God's son upon his resurrection. Remember that the phrase introduced with the attributive participle in verse 4 modifies the word Son in verse three. The Son was appointed by God to be "Son of God'. In other words, Jesus was already the Son before he was appointed to be the Son of God! The first usage (v. 3) of the word "Son," then, refers to Jesus' pre-existent divinity that he shared with the Father from all eternity. Jesus' appointment as "Son of God" (v. 4) refers to his installment as the messianic King at his resurrection.

This is the beauty of the usage of the participle!

## 4.0 Conclusion

You have learnt here that the mastery of the syntax of the participles is the very mastery of Greek syntax as the participles are very important in the process of Greek syntax. You have learnt that the difficulty in dealing with the participles is due to their usage: they can be used as nouns, adjectives, adverbs, or verbs and in any mood; their position in the word-order is also enigmatic as they may be thrown to the end of the sentence and finally the difficulty in locating the main verb the participle serves. You have looked into the adverbial use of the participle in Acts 19:2 when in the aorist, its action is simultaneous with the action of the main verb. You have also examined Romans 1:3-4, where there the two participles in the passage are adjectival participles. These two participles also have the same substantive that they modify.

#### 5.0 Summary

The following are the major points you have learnt in this unit:

- The mastery of the syntax of the participles is the very mastery of Greek syntax.
- Participles can be used as nouns, adjectives, adverbs, or verbs and in any mood; their position in the word-order is also enigmatic as they may be thrown to the end of the sentence and finally the difficulty in locating the main verb the participle serves.
- You have the adverbial use of the participle in Acts 19:2 when in the aorist, its action is simultaneous with the action of the main verb. You have the adjectival use of the participle in Romans 1:3-4

## Self-Assessment Exercise

Identify the participles in this passage and indicate how they have been used:

**Ephesians 2:1** Καὶ ὑμᾶς ὄντας νεκροὺς τοῖς παραπτώμασιν καὶ ταῖς ἁμαρτίαις □ὑμῶν,

**Ephesians 2:2** έν αἶς ποτε περιεπατήσατε κατὰ τὸν αἰῶνα τοῦ κόσμου τούτου, κατὰ τὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς ἐξουσίας τοῦ ἀέρος, τοῦ πνεύματος τοῦ νῦν ἐνεργοῦντος ἐν τοῖς υἰοῖς τῆς ἀπειθείας·

**Ephesians 2:3** έν οἶς καὶ ἡμεῖς πάντες ἀνεστράφημέν ποτε ἐν ταῖς ἐπιθυμίαις τῆς σαρκὸς ἡμῶν, ποιοῦντες τὰ θελήματα τῆς σαρκὸς καὶ τῶν διανοιῶν, καὶ □ἤμεθα τέκνα φύσει ὀργῆς ὡς καὶ οἱ λοιποί·

Ephesians 2:4 ὁ δὲ θεὸς πλούσιος ὢν ἐν ἐλέει, διὰ τὴν πολλὴν ἀγάπην αὐτοῦ ῆν ἠγάπησεν ἡμᾶς,

**Ephesians 2:5** καὶ ὄντας ἡμᾶς νεκροὺς τοῖς παραπτώμασιν συνεζωοποίησεν τῷ Χριστῷ — χάριτί ἐστε σεσῷσμένοι

## 6.0 References/Further Readings

- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2004). A Yoruba reading of the parable of the prodigal son. *African Journal of Biblical Studies*, 20 (1), Ibadan: National Association for Biblical Studies, 29-42.
- Adewale, Olubiyi Adeniyi (2015). *Understanding Biblical Greek*, Abeokuta: Crowther Theological Publishers
- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1993). *The Greek New Testament*, 4<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies

- Aland, B., K. Aland, J. Karavidopoulos, C. M. Martini, and B. M. Metzger (eds.) (1999). *Novum Testamentum*, Nestle-Aland 28<sup>th</sup> ed. Germany: United Bible Societies.
- Arndt, W. F. and F. W. Gingrich. (1957). A Greek-English Lexicon of the New Testament and Other Early Christian Literature. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.
- Bromiley, G. W. (1985). *Theological Dictionary of the New Testament* (One Volume edition). Grand Rapids: William B. Eerdmans Publishing Company.
- Mounce, William D. (1993). Basics of Biblical Greek, Grand Rapids: Zondervan.
- Summers, Ray. (1950). *Essentials of New Testament Greek*, Nashville: Broadman Press.